



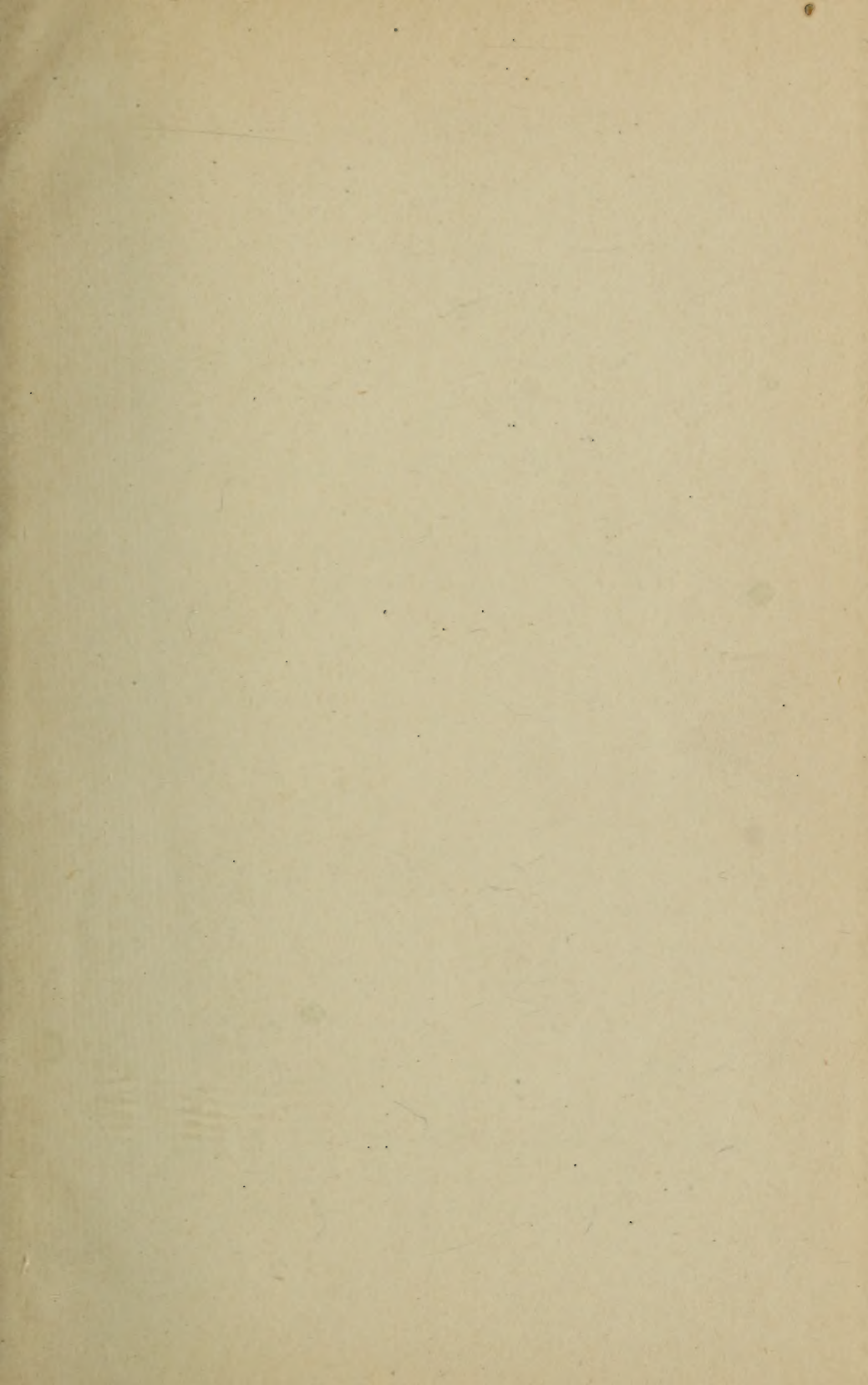
3 1761 08824512 1

MILLAN'S CANADIAN SCHOOL SERIES

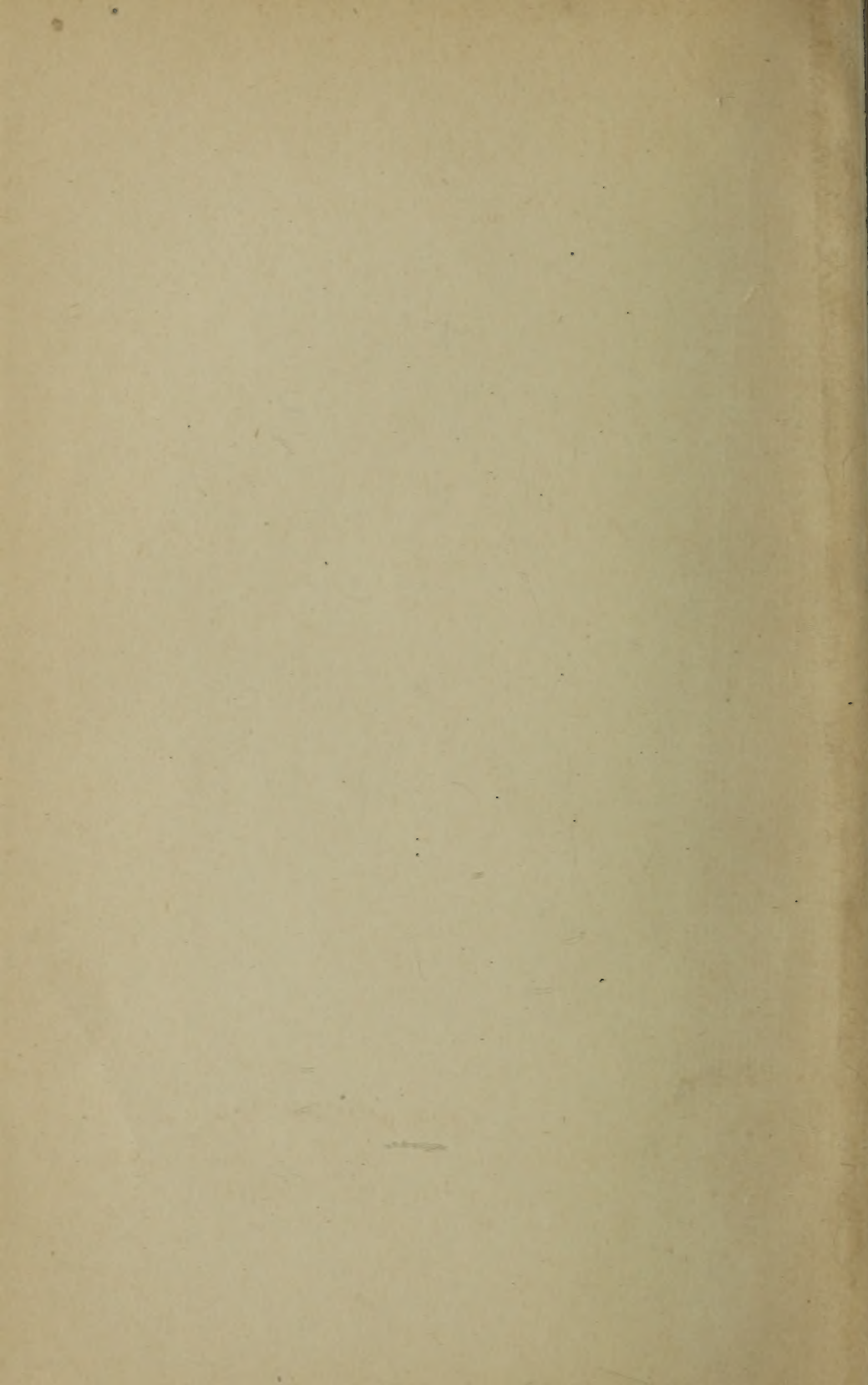
LATIN  
COMPOSITION  
MITCHELL













# LATIN COMPOSITION

BASED ON CAESAR

BY

GEORGE W. MITCHELL, M.A.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK  
QUEEN'S UNIVERSITY, KINGSTON  
CANADA

---

Toronto

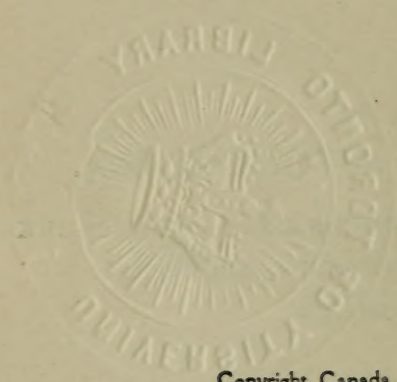
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY OF CANADA, LIMITED

London : Macmillan & Co., Limited

New York : The Macmillan Company

1908

195893  
25. 1. 34



Copyright, Canada, 1908, by  
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY  
OF CANADA,  
Limited

## PREFACE.

---

The only grammatical forms which the student need know before beginning this book are the terminations of the first, second, and third declensions of the regular noun; the regular adjective of the first and second declension; the regular verb, active, passive and deponent, together with the irregular verbs *esse*, *ire*, and *ferre*.

No general English-Latin vocabulary is given. The teacher should supply vocabulary only after the pupil has expressed the English idiom in the form required by the Latin.

Each Latin exercise, with the foot-notes relating to it, should be carefully studied for vocabulary, syntax, and idioms, before the English exercise is turned into Latin.

After each Supplementary Exercise, the teacher should assign a connected passage of his own, to be done by the pupil without help of any kind. Some of the Latin exercises, which are for the most part extracts from Caesar's *Gallic War*, will serve the purpose if turned into idiomatic English. For an example compare Supplementary Exercise XI. with page 25, sentence 12.

G. W. M.

KINGSTON, December, 1908.





# LATIN COMPOSITION

## BASED ON CAESAR

### LESSON I.

#### THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION.

1. After a verb of perceiving or declaring, the English noun clause beginning with the conjunction "that" (expressed or understood) is translated into Latin as follows:

(a) The conjunction "that" is always omitted.

(b) The subject of the noun clause stands in the Accusative.

(c) The verb in the noun clause is in the Infinitive: as,

*Legatus dicit (putat) Caesarem adesse.* The lieutenant-general says (thinks) that Caesar is present.

We sometimes use the same construction in English; e.g., The lieutenant-general declares Caesar to be present. The difference is that English does not often use this construction; Latin always does.

#### Translate into Latin:

1. The scout announces that the Germans are crossing the Rhine. 2. Caesar perceives that the Germans are waiting for their cavalry. 3. A scout informs the Britons that the Romans are approaching the island. 4. According to Caesar, Britain was densely populated.<sup>1</sup> 5. Caesar wrote<sup>2</sup> to the senate that Labienus had conquered the Belgae.<sup>3</sup> 6. Divitiacus begged Caesar not to put<sup>4</sup> his brother to death. He knew, he said,<sup>5</sup> that these charges were true and that<sup>6</sup> no one was more deserving of capital punishment.



<sup>1</sup>Use the words which you already know.

<sup>2</sup>This is equal to a verb of declaring because=declared by letter.

<sup>3</sup>After writing this sentence retranslate it into English and make sure that it cannot mean that the Belgae had conquered Labienus.

<sup>4</sup>Render by *ne* and Subjunctive.

<sup>5</sup>Omit. Put a colon or semi-colon at the end of the last sentence and go on with the Accusative and Infinitive. See the Latin Exercise, page 79, Note 2; also Supp. Ex. XVI., Note 2.

<sup>6</sup>And not=*neque*. And no one=*nec quisquam*.

## LESSON II.

### THE TENSE IN THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION.

1. (a) Use the Present Infinitive when the time is the *same* as that of the main verb.

(b) Use the Perfect Infinitive when the time is *previous* to that of the main verb.

2. Examples of (a):

He says (now) that Caesar is present (now).

He said (yesterday) that Caesar was present (yesterday).

The time expressed by "is present" in the first sentence is the *same* as the time expressed by the main verb (says). And the time expressed by "was present" in the second sentence is the *same* as the time expressed by the main verb (said). Therefore, use the Present Infinitive in both sentences: thus,

*Dicit Caesarem adesse.*

*Dixit Caesarem adesse.*

3. Examples of (b):

He says (now) that Caesar was present (yesterday).

He said (yesterday) that Caesar was (or had been) present (the day before yesterday).

The time expressed by "was present" in the first sentence is *previous* to the time expressed by the main verb (says), and the time expressed by "was" (or



"had been") "present" in the second sentence is *previous* to the time expressed by the main verb (said). Therefore, use the Perfect Infinitive in both sentences: thus,

*Dicit Caesarem adfuisse.*

*Dixit Caesarem adfuisse.*

4. Use the Future Infinitive, of course, if the time is *subsequent* to that of the main verb: as,

*Caesar dicit se venturum esse.* Caesar says that he will come.

*Caesar dixit se venturum esse.* Caesar said that he would come.

N.B.—Notice that the reflexive *se* must be used when the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the main verb. If the subjects are different, use a demonstrative: as,

*Caesar dixit eum venturum esse.* Caesar said that he (meaning Labienus) would come.

Translate into Latin:

1. The scout announced that they had broken up their (*movere*) camp. 2. The Gauls said that they were friendly to the Romans. 3. They say that Caesar put the captives to death. 4. The non-arrival of the corn excited in the mind of Caesar a suspicion<sup>1</sup> that the Helvetii were playing him false. 5. The story goes<sup>2</sup> that Romulus held the sovereign power for thirty years. 6. The Germans had encamped on unfavourable ground, under the supposition that the Romans were still on the other bank of the Rhine. 7. Caesar wrote to Labienus that he would come to him at once.

<sup>1</sup>Use the verb *suspicio* and for the rest depend upon your own vocabulary. Simplify the whole sentence.

<sup>2</sup>*Fama est.* A phrase with the same sense as a verb of speaking will of course be followed by the Accusative and Infinitive.

## LESSON III.

## THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE FUTURE INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN VERBS.—VERBS OF FEARING.

1. Verbs signifying to hope, promise, undertake, swear, and threaten are followed by the Accusative and the Future Infinitive when futurity is implied: as,

*Jurat se Romanos non deserturum.* He swears not to desert the Romans.

N.B.—Be careful, however, with the verb *suscipio* in the sense of “undertake.” It may have a *noun* as object but not a *noun clause*. You may say: *Opus suscepit*, for “he undertook the task,” but, “He undertook to do this” = *Pollicitus est se hoc facturum*.

2. After a verb of fearing, “lest” (or “that” meaning “lest”), is to be translated by *ne*, “that . . . not” or “lest . . . not” by *ne non* or *ut*. The verb is in the Subjunctive: as,

*Timebant ne circumvenirentur.* They feared that they would (or lest they should) be surrounded.

*Timeo ne non (or ut) opus suscipias.* I fear that you will not undertake the task.

N.B.—Observe that the Latin Present Subjunctive has here the force of a Future Tense.

Translate into Latin:

1. Labienus feared that the scout would not discover the enemy's camp. 2. Caesar feared the ships would not come. 3. Labienus was protecting the harbours lest the Gauls should seize the ships. 4. Caesar feared the Aedui would not send cavalry. 5. Caesar feared lest<sup>1</sup> Labienus should be conquered not by the enemy but by famine. 6. Hannibal swore to capture the city of Rome. 7. Because he feared a renewal of hostilities on the part of the Gauls, Caesar hastened<sup>2</sup> to the army. 8. He promised to send out the soldiers on a foraging expedition.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Use *ne...non* here for "lest...not." You will then get the proper contrast between "not by the enemy" and "but by famine."

<sup>2</sup>*Properare* or *contendere*. If you use *maturare* you must have an Infinitive like *ire* or *proficisci*.

<sup>3</sup>The supine in *um* can translate purpose.

## LESSON IV.

### *Ut* AND *Ne* AFTER VERBS OF PERSUADING, ETC.

1. With verbs like "persuade," "warn," "advise," if you have the idea of *urging or inducing somebody to do something*, the subordinate clause is to be rendered by an *ut* clause (*ne* if negative): as,

*Caesar Labieno persuasit ut sine mora ad se veniret.*  
Caesar persuaded Labienus to come to him at once.

2. If the idea of *urging or inducing somebody to do something* is not present, use the Acc. and Infin.; as,

*Caesar Labieno persuasit hostes adesse.* Caesar persuaded Labienus that the enemy were at hand.

3. The rule for the Tense of the Subjunctive in (1) is the same as that for clauses of purpose. After a Present or Future Tense use the Present Subjunctive; after a Past Tense use the Imperfect Subjunctive.

N.B.—The Historic Present and the English Perfect with "have" may be followed by either the Present or the Imperfect.

4. *Jubeo* and *veto* take the same construction as English, thus,

*Jubeo (veto) eum abire.* I order (forbid) him to go.

### Translate into Latin:

1. The lieutenant-general persuades the slave to carry the news<sup>1</sup> to the islanders.
2. Caesar wrote<sup>2</sup> to his officers to keep the army within their lines.<sup>3</sup>
3. The consul advised his colleague to break<sup>4</sup> up his camp without delay.
4. As<sup>5</sup> their supply of ammuni-



tion<sup>3</sup> ran short, the Gauls were unable to hold their position. 5. To render their own return impossible,<sup>6</sup> the Helvetii set fire to their towns and villages. 6. Caesar said that they would never persuade him to make terms with an enemy under arms. 7. Caesar wrote to Labienus that his supply of ammunition had run short.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*Res* may denote anything which can be supplied from the context. If you use *nuntiare* the meaning of *res* will be clear.

<sup>2</sup>Caesar is getting his officers to do something by *writing* to them.

<sup>3</sup>Use your own vocabulary. *‘Movere.*

<sup>5</sup>Say “on account of the lack of.”

<sup>6</sup>Use *posse* with a negative.

<sup>7</sup>Use *deficere*. You cannot do this sentence like 4, though you might turn 4 so that *deficere* could be used in it also.

## LESSON V.

### *Cum* TEMPORAL, CAUSAL AND CONCESSIVE.

1. *Cum* meaning “since” or “although” always takes the Subjunctive.

2. In relating *past* events *cum* meaning “when” takes the Subjunctive, and the Tense should be Imperfect or Pluperfect according to the meaning: as,

*Cum Caesar portum intraret (intravisset), nautae praedam in aquam ejecerunt.* When Caesar was entering (entered or had entered) the harbour, the sailors threw the plunder overboard.

3. If, however, the “when” clause really contains the main idea, and the principal clause is the clause of time, *cum* is used with the Perfect Indicative; as,

*Iam ver appetebat, cum Hannibal castra movit.* Spring was already approaching when Hannibal broke up his camp.

This is equal to: “When spring was approaching,” etc., and might be translated according to (2) above.

*Cum iam ver appeteret, Hannibal castra movit.*

N.B.—Notice that the *cum*-clause when it contains the main idea comes after the principal clause.

Translate into Latin:

1. In Caesar's absence<sup>1</sup> the army stormed the town.
2. Since the islanders were making preparations<sup>2</sup> for war, Caesar took possession of the town.
3. Now that<sup>3</sup> he had conquered Gaul he resolved to cross the Rhine with a view<sup>3</sup> to terrifying the Germans.
4. When it came to Caesar's ears that the Helvetii intended to march through the Province, he hastened from Italy into Gaul.
5. Saying<sup>4</sup> this in a loud voice, he jumped overboard.<sup>3</sup>
6. Not many days had elapsed,<sup>5</sup> when envoys came from Ariovistus.
7. When Caesar was giving an audience to the ambassadors of the Gauls, the Germans crossed<sup>6</sup> the Rhine.
8. The ship was approaching the shore, when the standard-bearer jumped overboard.

<sup>1</sup>Use a *cum*-clause for practice.

<sup>2</sup>*Bellum parare*—to prepare for war.

<sup>3</sup>Always look to the meaning and translate the idea, using if possible words which you already know.

<sup>4</sup>When he had said. <sup>5</sup>*Intercedere*.

<sup>6</sup>Remember that there is no "v" in the compounds of *eo*.

## LESSON VI.

### CLAUSES OF RESULT.

1. Compare the following sentences:—

(a) Caesar came quickly that he might surprise the enemy.

(b) Caesar came so quickly that he surprised the enemy.

The subordinate clause in (a) is a clause of purpose, but in (b) it is a clause of result.

2. A clause of result is translated by *ut* with the subjunctive; as,

*Tam celeriter Caesar venit ut hostes opprimeret.*

So quickly did Caesar come that he surprised the enemy.

3. When a clause of result is negative, use *ut* (not *ne*, as in a clause of purpose) and retain the same negative as in the English; thus,

*Tam celeriter Caesar venit ut nemo eum videret.*  
Caesar came so quickly that nobody saw him.

N.B.—Do not employ the reflexive *se* in a clause of result to refer to the subject of the principal verb. In a similar clause expressing purpose, *se* would be put for *eum*; thus,

*Caesar celeriter venit ne quis se videret.* Caesar came quickly that nobody (*lit.* lest anybody) might see him.

Observe, also, that the negative purpose begins with *ne* (lest) and the English must be re-arranged to suit the sense; thus,

that not, *or* in order that not=lest (*ne*).

that nobody, *or* in order that nobody=lest anybody (*ne quis*).

that nothing, *or* in order that nothing=lest anything (*ne quid*).

that never, *or* in order that never=lest ever (*ne umquam*).

that nowhere, *or* in order that nowhere=lest anywhere (*ne usquam*).

4. The rule for the tense of the subjunctive in a clause of result is as follows:—

(a) After a Present or Future Tense use the Present or Perfect Subjunctive.

The English will make it clear whether to use the Present or the Perfect.

(b) After a Past Tense use the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Some very important exceptions to this rule will be found on page 85, but they are not necessary for the exercise which follows.

Translate into Latin:

1. Death has such<sup>1</sup> terrors for him that he remains at home.<sup>2</sup>
2. So much did he hate the din<sup>3</sup> of the city that he remained in the country.
3. The general



offered up a prayer<sup>4</sup> to Juppiter for help. 4. The Remi persuaded<sup>5</sup> their neighbors to enter upon hostilities again. 5. The Remi persuaded<sup>5</sup> their neighbors that the Romans were getting ready for war. 6. There was some danger<sup>6</sup> of the women meeting their death amidst the flying darts of the combatants.<sup>7</sup> 7. They were so cowardly that they retreated and never<sup>8</sup> fought again. 8. Such was the energy<sup>9</sup> of the soldiers that the heavy transports equalled<sup>10</sup> the men-of-war in speed. 9. The Roman nation is of such a character that it<sup>11</sup> cannot rest<sup>12</sup> under a defeat.<sup>13</sup> 10. As a result of this<sup>14</sup> Themistocles became famous.<sup>15</sup> 11. Caesar drew up his army in such a way that no one could cross the river. 12. Caesar drew up his army close to the river that no one might be able to cross. 13. So great was the power of Rome at that time, both for offensive<sup>16</sup> and defensive<sup>16</sup> tactics, that the neighboring states did not venture<sup>17</sup> on a declaration of war.

<sup>1</sup>*Talis*=such, of such a character. *Tantus*=so great, of such a size.

<sup>2</sup>*Domi*. An old Case called the Locative gave the idea of place where. In the first and second Declensions its form is that of the Gen. Sing. Some examples are: *domi* (at home), *ruri* (in the country), *Romae* (at Rome), *Corinthi* (at Corinth).

<sup>3</sup>*Strepitus*. <sup>4</sup>*Precor*.

<sup>5</sup>Ask yourself the question whether the Remi are inducing anybody to do anything. See Lesson IV.

<sup>6</sup>*Periculum erat* has the same force as a verb of fearing.

<sup>7</sup>Present Participle. <sup>8</sup>And never=*nec umquam*. <sup>9</sup>*Virtus*.

<sup>10</sup>*Adaequo*. Say, "equalled the speed of," and it is better to make a person do a thing in Latin.

<sup>11</sup>The Relative is often substituted for a conjunction + a personal or demonstrative pronoun. *Ut ea=quae*. The same thing may be seen in a clause of purpose, e.g., *Legatos misit qui (=ut ii) pacem peterent*. He sent ambassadors who (=in order that they) might seek peace.

<sup>12</sup>*Quiescere*. <sup>13</sup>Say, "(when) defeated."

<sup>14</sup>*Quo factum est*. <sup>15</sup>*Inlustrare*, but mind the Voice.

<sup>16</sup>*Robur*=power of resistance, *vires*=power of attacking.

<sup>17</sup>The Imperfect Subjunctive is the regular past tense when the main verb is a past tense. It is not to be restricted to continuous or repeated action.

LESSON VI. (*Continued*).

## CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. VERBS OF ASKING, ETC.

1. The idea of purpose must never be expressed in Latin prose by the Infinitive, but by *ut* (neg. *ne*), with the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive. See the previous lesson and page 86. For other constructions see the Index.

2. Verbs of asking, advising, and commanding followed by an Infinitive in English give the idea of *urging* or *inducing somebody to do something*. For the Latin idiom see Lesson IV., §1 and §3.

Exceptions: *Jubeo* (I command), and *veto* (I forbid), take the Infinitive as in English: thus,

*Jubeo (veto) eum abire.* I order (forbid) him to go.  
Translate into Latin:

1. The Gauls beg the senate to defend them from injury at the hands of Caesar. 2. Caesar ordered Labienus to hold the harbour for fear that he should be compelled<sup>1</sup> to remain in Britain. 3. Since they feared that the defence of the town was an impossibility<sup>2</sup> for them, owing to their lack of ammunition, the inhabitants could not be prevented by<sup>3</sup> their chiefs from<sup>4</sup> surrendering. 4. The Helvetii said that they were prevented by Dumnorix from<sup>4</sup> sending the corn that day.<sup>5</sup> 5. The senate issued an order to Caesar not<sup>6</sup> to comply with the demands of the Gauls.

<sup>1</sup>*Cogo* may be followed by the Infinitive.   <sup>2</sup>Use *possum*.

<sup>3</sup>The agent, or person, by whom a thing is done must have *a* or *ab* expressed.

<sup>4</sup>After a verb of hindering use *ne* or *quo minus* with subj.: thus, *Galli nautas deterrebant ne* (or *quo minus*) *portum intrarent*. *Ne* (lest) or *quo minus* (by which the less) they might enter—from entering. If the verb of hindering is negative *quin* with the subj. may be used.

<sup>5</sup>Abl. *without* a prep.

<sup>6</sup>Do not use *jubeo* with a negative. Use *veto* or *impero* with *ne*.

## LESSON VII.

## THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

1. The Perfect Participle Passive is formed from the Supine by changing *um* into *us*. It agrees, like an adjective, in Gender, Number, and Case with the noun which it qualifies.

2. The following are some Perfect Participles Passive, with their meaning:

comparatus, -a, -um,	<i>having been collected or procured</i>
factus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>done or made</i>
confectus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>completed</i>
interfectus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>killed</i>
vulneratus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>wounded</i>
cognitus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>known or learnt</i>
missus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>sent</i>
emissus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>sent out</i>
praemissus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>sent forward</i>
commissus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>joined or begun (in reference to battle)</i>
relictus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>left</i>
expositus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>placed outside of</i>
pulsus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>driven</i>
repulsus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>driven back</i>
expulsus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>driven out</i>
repertus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>found</i>
acceptus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>received</i>

N. B.—The Perfect Participle Passive may be rendered “being collected,” “being done,” “being completed,” etc., or more simply still, “collected,”



“done,” “completed.” The last form is that usually given as the third principal part of the verb in English grammar.

3. If a noun is used along with the Perfect Participle Passive, and if that noun is not the subject or object of a verb, or the objective after a preposition, then both the noun and the participle stand in the Ablative Case: thus,

The plan having been discovered, Caesar hastened into Gaul. *Cognito consilio Caesar in Galliam contendit.*

Here the noun “plan” is not the subject or object of a verb, nor is it objective after a preposition, and the participle “having been discovered” is used in close connection with it. Both noun and participle are in the Ablative Case in Latin. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute.

### VOCABULARY.

<b>in</b> icere	to throw into, cast upon
<b>e</b> icere	to throw out
<b>per</b> pauci, -ae, -a	very few
<b>con</b> juratio (f.)	league, conspiracy

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Comparato frumento Caesar Rhenum transiit.
2. Facto proelio Germani ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt.
3. Germanico bello confecto Caesar Rhenum transire statuit.
4. Germani post tergum clamore audito se ex castris ejecerunt.
5. Magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt.
6. Milites nostri, perpaucis vulneratis, se in castra receperunt.
7. Interim consilio Caesaris

cognito, legati a multis Britanniae civitatibus ad eum veniunt. 8. Conjuratiōe facta, Britanni paulatim ex castris discedere coeperunt. 9. Commisso proelio nostrorum militum impetum hostes sustinere non potuerunt. 10. Laudatis militibus, legatos ad portum Itium convenire jubet. 11. Navibus ad Britannicum bellum comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. 12. Labieno in continenti relicto ut portum tueretur, Caesar ipse ad Britanniam proficiscitur. 13. Caesar expositis militibus de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit. 14. Hostes ab equitibus repulsi se in silvas<sup>1</sup> abdiderunt. 15. Munito loco, Caesar custodias pro castris ponit. 16. Castris vallo fossaque munitis Caesar custodias in moenibus disponit.

<sup>1</sup>The enemy were not *in* the woods; they went *into* the woods to hide, hence *silvas* is in Acc.

Translate into Latin, using the Ablative Absolute wherever possible:

1. After the battle was begun<sup>2</sup> the enemy beat a retreat. 2. Leaving the tenth legion<sup>3</sup> on the continent, Caesar sets out for Britain. 3. Having found a suitable place for a camp Caesar hastened against the enemy at the third watch. 4. On defeating the enemy Caesar led his army back to the sea without delay. 5. Having summoned the engineers he began to fortify the camp. 6. Having fortified his position Caesar sent out the cavalry. 7. Having explored the woods the cavalry brought back word

<sup>2</sup>Turn the clause thus, "The battle having been begun."

<sup>3</sup>Turn into, "The tenth legion being left."

that the enemy had departed. 8. On learning the plan of the Britons Caesar led his army into the territory of Cassivellaunus. 9. Having sent forward the cavalry Caesar ordered the legions to follow immediately. 10. After his territory had been devastated Cassivellaunus sent ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Caesar orders Cassivellaunus to send him hostages. 12. When he had received the hostages<sup>4</sup> Caesar led his army back to the sea. 13. Seizing the ships of the Menapii the Germans crossed the Rhine. 14. Having taken the town by assault Caesar put the senate to the sword. 15. The Tencteri,<sup>5</sup> being driven out of their territory by the Suebi, crossed the Rhine with a great multitude of men. 16. Exasperated by the obstinate defence the Romans spared neither age<sup>6</sup> nor sex in the conquered town.

“Hostages being received.”

<sup>4</sup>Can the Abl. Abs. be used here? Absolute means independent. “Tencteri” is not grammatically independent. It is the subject of the verb “crossed.” <sup>5</sup>Mind the sense.

## LESSON VIII.

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (*continued*).

1. In the previous exercise it should be noticed that the participle in the Ablative Absolute was always Passive Voice. When the English was given in the Active, the phrase had always to be turned into the Passive before translating it into Latin. Thus in the third sentence of the last exercise, “having found a



suitable place" was turned into "a suitable place having been found." It should now be observed that if the verb is intransitive it will be impossible to turn the participle into the Passive. Thus in the sentence, "Having come to the territory of the enemy, Caesar pitched his camp," the clause "having come to the territory of the enemy" cannot be turned into the Passive, because there is no Passive for the verb "to come," which is intransitive. It will, therefore, be impossible to translate "having come to the territory of the enemy" by the Ablative Absolute construction. Say, therefore:

When he had come to the territory of the enemy, Caesar pitched his camp. *Caesar cum ad hostium fines venisset castra posuit.*

#### REVIEW OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Ripa, *bank* (of river)

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ripa	ripae
<i>Gen.</i> ripae	riparum
<i>Dat.</i> ripae	ripis
<i>Acc.</i> ripam	ripas
<i>Abl.</i> ripa	ripis

Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine except names of males, which are, of course, Masculine.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar, cum suos urgeri vidisset, in primam aciem processit.
2. Caesar ubi suos urgeri vidit, manipulos laxare jussit.
3. Caesar, ubi suos urgeri

vidit, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit. 4. Caesar, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis milites esse confertos vidit, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit ut gladiis uti possent. 5. Caesar, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis milites duodecimae legionis esse confertos vidit, quartae cohortis centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, et ubi rem esse in angusto vidit, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit ut gladiis uti possent.

Translate into Latin:

1. On coming to the army Caesar heard that the Gauls had formed a league against the Roman people. 2. Having placed a garrison there he hastened into Germany. 3. Having determined to wage war with the Germans, Caesar crossed the Rhine. 4. That year the Tencteri, having been driven out of their lands by the Suebi, crossed the river Rhine with a mighty host of men. 5. When Caesar learned that the Germans had crossed the Rhine, he led his army into Gaul by forced (*magnus*) marches. 6. On hearing that Caesar was coming, the Germans immediately sent ambassadors to him. 7. On arriving there Caesar discovered that twenty men-of-war had been built and that all preparations had been made for the British war. 8. The Romans attempted to make a road through the forest with the axe.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>By cutting down the trees. Abl. Abs.

## LESSON IX.

## THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Since Deponent verbs have a Passive form but an Active meaning, observe that the following Perfect Participles, being from Deponent verbs, have an Active meaning:

nactus, *having obtained*  
hortatus, *having exhorted*  
cohortatus, *having exhorted*  
conatus, *having attempted*  
progressus, *having advanced*  
secutus, *having followed*  
veritus, *having feared*  
arbitratus, *having thought*

Having exhorted the soldiers, Caesar crossed the river. *Cohortatus milites, Caesar flumen transiit.*

Here the English is exactly the same as the Latin and need not be turned. It must be remembered, however, that this is the case only with deponent verbs. If the verb to exhort were not deponent, the phrase "having exhorted the soldiers" would have to be changed into "the soldiers having been exhorted."

## REVIEW OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Ventus, *wind*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom. ventus	venti
Gen. venti	ventorum
Dat. vento	ventis
Acc. ventum	ventos
Abl. vento	ventis



*Ager, a field*

<i>Nom.</i>	ager	agri
<i>Gen.</i>	agri	agrorum
<i>Dat.</i>	agro	agris
<i>Acc.</i>	agrum	agros
<i>Abl.</i>	agro	agris

*Proelium, battle*

<i>Nom.</i>	proelium	proelia
<i>Gen.</i>	proeli	proeliorum
<i>Dat.</i>	proelio	proeliis
<i>Acc.</i>	proelium	proelia
<i>Abl.</i>	proelio	proeliis

Nouns ending in *us* and *er* of the Second Declension are Masculine, those in *um* are Neuter.

N. B.—Neuter nouns are always the same in the Nominative and Accusative, and in the Plural these Cases end in *a*.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>idoneus, -a, -um</b>	<i>suitable</i>	<b>primus, -a, -um</b>	<i>first (of more than two)</i>
<b>dicere</b>	<i>to say</i>		
<b>tempestas</b>	<i>weather</i>	<b>lux, lucis</b>	<i>light</i>
<b>conscendere</b>	<i>to climb</i>	<b>noctu</b>	<i>by night</i>
<b>commutatio</b>	<i>change</i>	<b>officium</b>	<i>duty</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Germani dicunt se venisse invitos, ejectos domo.
2. Caesar idoneum esse arbitratus<sup>1</sup> Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit.
3. Hostes proelio superati statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt.
- 4.

<sup>1</sup>The two Perfect Participles *veritus* and *arbitratus* are best translated by the English Present Participles "fearing" and "thinking."

Caesar perfidiam barbarorum suspicatus statim decimam legionem secum proficisci jussit. 5. Caesar idoneam tempestatem nactus ad Britanniam proficiscitur. 6. Veritus<sup>1</sup> ne a principibus civitatis desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit. 7. Tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. 8. Tum venti commutationem secutus ad oram Britanniae prima luce pervenit. 9. Britanni ad flumen progressi proelium committere coeperunt. 10. Commisso proelio hostes impetum nostrorum sustinere non potuerunt. 11. Cohortatus milites ut fortiter pugnarent Caesar in primam aciem processit. 12. Conati noctu flumen transire et a custodiis Menapiorum repulsi, domum redierunt. 13. Germani ad Rhenum progressi transire noctu conantur.

<sup>1</sup>See note on previous page.

Translate into Latin:

1. Leaving a strong guard on the banks of the river Caesar hastened into the territory of the Sigambri. 2. Meeting with suitable weather Caesar resolved to cross over to Britain at once. 3. Advancing from the woods the Britons began to attack the Roman camp. 4. Having exhorted the legions to fight bravely the generals gave the signal for battle.<sup>2</sup> 5. Having given the signal for battle Caesar went forward to the van. 6. Fearing lest the Gauls would renew the war Caesar hastened from Italy. 7. Fearing that Labienus was not able to defend the camp Caesar sets out for the army. 8. When he

<sup>2</sup>Genitive Case. Why?

arrived there<sup>3</sup> he summoned the chiefs of Gaul. 9. Having exhorted the chiefs of Gaul to remain in their allegiance<sup>4</sup> he returned to Italy. 10. Having fortified the camp with a rampart and a ditch, Caesar set out against the Morini.

<sup>3</sup>*eo*=there, when there is motion to; *ibi*=there, when there is no motion. <sup>4</sup>*officium*.

## LESSON X.

### THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

1. The Future Infinitive Active is formed from the Supine by changing *um* into *urus* and adding *esse*, which is the Present Infinitive of the verb "to be."

The following are some examples:

nuntiaturus esse, *will or would announce*  
 processurus esse, *will or would advance*  
 reversurus esse, *will or would return*  
 transiturus esse, *will or would cross*  
 venturus esse, *will or would come*  
 permissurus esse, *will or would entrust*  
 futurus esse, *will or would be*  
 neglecturus esse, *will or would neglect*

2. The Future Infinitive is used in the Accusative and the Infinitive construction whenever a future meaning is required. Thus:

*Legati dixerunt se Caesari obsides daturus esse.*  
 The ambassadors said that they would give hostages to Caesar.

Observe that the termination *us* must be changed to agree with the subject *se*, which in this case is Accusative Plural.



## REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION.

Pars, *a part*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> pars	partes
<i>Gen.</i> partis	partium
<i>Dat.</i> parti	partibus
<i>Acc.</i> partem	partes
<i>Abl.</i> parte	partibus

Nouns of one syllable ending in *s* or *x* preceded by consonant have *ium* in the Genitive Plural.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Legati rem se suis nuntiatiuros esse dixerunt.
2. Caesar se longius processurum esse negavit.
3. Legati dixerunt se post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros<sup>1</sup>.
4. Mercatores Cassivellauno nuntiaverunt Caesarem in Britanniam esse transiturum.
5. Hostes suspicati nostros huc esse venturos in silvis constiterunt.
6. Indutiomarus dixit se ad eum in castra esse venturum.
7. Indutiomarus dicit se suas fortunas Caesari permissurum.
8. Britanni pollicentur se obsides ad Caesarem missuros.
9. Bello Helvetiorum confecto Galliae principes ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt.
10. Caesar sperabat se ad oram Britanniae ante primam lucem perventurum.

<sup>1</sup>*Esse* is often omitted.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar hopes to reach<sup>2</sup> the river before night.
2. Ariovistus promises to return after the third day.

<sup>2</sup>"To reach," though present tense, has a future meaning, therefore the Future Infinitive must be used in Latin. All such sentences should be turned thus: Caesar hopes that he will reach the river before night. The construction is the Accusative and the Infinitive, and the Accusative of the pronoun must be expressed. Verbs signifying to hope, promise, undertake, swear and threaten are followed by the Accusative and the Future Infinitive when futurity is implied.

3. Hannibal swears to be always an enemy to the Roman people. 4. Hannibal swore to be an enemy to the Roman people as long as he lived. 5. Ariovistus answered that he would come to Caesar with one hundred hostages. 6. Caesar answered that he would not overlook the injuries of the Aedui. 7. The messenger promises to announce the matter to Labienus. 8. The Gauls said that they would entrust their wives and children to Caesar. 9. So great was the number of the enemy that Caesar was not able to storm the town. 10. The enemy sent reinforcements that Caesar might not take the town by storm.

## LESSON XI.

### THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE LATIN VERB.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the Present Indicative, the Present Infinitive, the Perfect Indicative and the Supine. They are called the principal parts because all other parts of the verb are formed from them.

Examine the following:

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>	laudo	laudare	laudavi	laudatum
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	moneo	monēre	monui	monitum
<i>3rd Conj.</i>	duco	ducere	duxi	ductum
<i>4th Conj.</i>	munio	munire	munivi	munitum

The Conjugation of the verb is determined by the ending of the Present Infinitive: thus,

First Conjugation ends in *are*.

Second Conjugation ends in *ēre* (the *e* before *re* is long).

Third Conjugation ends in *ere* (the *e* before *re* is short).

Fourth Conjugation ends in *ire*.

The Second Conjugation is also distinguished from the Third by the fact that in the Second Conjugation the *o* is preceded by *e*.

In giving the principal parts the Present and Perfect Indicative are always in the First Person. See any verb in your vocabulary.

## TABLE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	laudo, laudare	laudavi	laudatum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> laudat	<i>Perf.</i> laudavit	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> laudabat		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> laudet		
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> laudaret	<i>Plpf.</i> laudavisset	
<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> laudare	<i>Pf.</i> laudavisse	<i>Fut.</i> laudaturus esse

The Tenses are arranged underneath the principal part from which they are formed. The student should now make out the table of the other three conjugations, taking *moneo*, *duco* and *munio* as examples.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsum</b>	<i>to drive</i>
<b>expello, expellere, expuli, expulsum</b>	<i>to drive out</i>
<b>mitto, mittere, misi, missum</b>	<i>to send</i>
<b>praemitto, praemittere, etc.</b>	<i>to send ahead</i>
<b>emitto, emittere, etc.</b>	<i>to send out</i>
<b>dimitto, dimittere, etc.</b>	<i>to send away</i>
<b>committo, committere, etc.</b>	<i>to join (battle)</i>
<b>iter, itineris (N.)</b>	<i>march, journey, road</i>

Translate into English:

1. Ea hieme Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri, agris ab Suebis expulsi, magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo<sup>1</sup> Rhenus influit. Quod<sup>2</sup> cum Caesar cognovisset, magnis itineribus in Galliam exercitum duxit. Germani eius<sup>3</sup> adventu<sup>4</sup> subito perterriti statim ad eum legatos de pace miserunt.

<sup>1</sup>quo, where.    <sup>2</sup>Which.    <sup>3</sup>eius, of him, or his.

<sup>4</sup>adventu, Ablative Singular of *adventus*, which is a noun of the Fourth Declension.



Translate into Latin:

1. That year the Suebi, the most warlike nation in Germany, drove the Usipetes out of their lands. Fearing that they would cross the Rhine; Caesar at once led his army from Italy into Gaul. On arriving there<sup>1</sup> he discovered that they had already reached the bank of the river and were attempting to cross. To prevent their accomplishing this<sup>2</sup> he sent forward the cavalry without delay to attack<sup>3</sup> them (as they were<sup>4</sup>) encumbered<sup>5</sup> in the water.

<sup>1</sup>Put this word first.

<sup>2</sup>Say which (*quod*). Put this word first. Latin begins a new sentence with a word that carries the mind back to the previous sentence. "This," or better "which," refers to the attempt to cross the Rhine.

<sup>3</sup>Use the Supine.

<sup>4</sup>Omit.

<sup>5</sup>*impeditus*.

## LESSON XI

### THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

The Perfect Indicative Passive is formed by adding *est* for the Singular and *sunt* for the Plural to the Perfect Participle Passive.

Learn by heart the following Perfects Indicative Passive:

#### *Singular*

#### *Plural*

necatus est, *he was killed* necati sunt, *they were killed*

occisus est, *he was killed* occisi sunt, *they were killed*

missus est, *he was sent*

dimissus est, *he was sent away*

praemissus est, *he was sent forward*

ductus est, *he was led*

traductus est, *he was led across*

expulsus est, *he was driven out*

The termination of the Perfect Participle must be changed to agree with the subject.

The queen was killed. *Regina necata est.*

The queens were killed. *Reginae necatae sunt.*

Table of the Passive of *laudare*.

laudor (1st pers.) laudari		laudatus sum ( <i>sum</i> is the 1st pers. of <i>est</i> )
Indic.	<i>Pres.</i> laudatur	<i>Perf.</i> laudatus est
	<i>Imperf.</i> laudabatur	
Subj.	<i>Pres.</i> laudetur	<i>Plpf.</i> laudatus esset
	<i>Imperf.</i> laudaretur	
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i> laudari		<i>Perf.</i> laudatus esse

Translate into English:

1. Hostes, abjectis armis, terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus. 2. Itaque dies circiter viginti in eo loco commoratus est,<sup>1</sup> quod Corus ventus navigationem impendebat. 3. Legati a multis Galliae civitatibus ad Caesarem de pace missi sunt. 4. Opere effecto, exercitus Rhenum traductus est. 5. Decima legio sine mora emissa est. 6. Consilia hostium ab exploratoribus cognita sunt. 7. Tencteri ab Suebis agris expulsi sunt. 8. Ea hieme multae naves longae ab Romanis aedificatae sunt. 9. Commius Atrebas a Caesare in Britanniam praemissus est. 10. Dicunt Commium a Caesare in Britanniam praemisum<sup>2</sup> esse. 11. Tanta tempestas subito coorta est (arose) ut naves cursum tenere non possent. 12. Germani celeritate Caesaris adventus<sup>3</sup> perterriti statim ad eum legatos de pace miserunt. His<sup>4</sup> Caesar imperavit ut statim in Germaniam reverterentur et in Ubiorum finibus con-

<sup>1</sup>This is a Deponent verb (*commorari*, to delay), and therefore, though Passive in form, it is active in meaning.

<sup>2</sup>To form the Perfect Infinitive Passive put *esse* for *est* of the Perfect Indicative.

<sup>3</sup>Genitive Case of *adventus*.

<sup>4</sup>These. Observe that this word is placed first as it carries the mind back to the Germans in the previous sentence.

siderent. Haec<sup>5</sup> legati suis renuntiaverunt. Interea<sup>6</sup> Caesar, cum vereretur ut Germani imperata sua facerent, bellum parare coepit.

<sup>5</sup>These things. This word is placed first because it refers to the things commanded by Caesar in the previous sentence.

<sup>6</sup>*interea* is placed first because it too carries the mind back to the previous sentence. *interea* = meanwhile, that is, while the ambassadors were away announcing Caesar's orders to their compatriots.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Britons were frightened by the shape of the Roman ships. 2. The tenth legion was sent out to forage (supine). 3. Our cavalry was thrown into confusion by the Gallic horse. 4. The legions were taken across into Britain without their baggage. 5. The scout brought back word that our cavalry had been thrown into confusion by the Gallic horse. 6. The scouts brought back word that our cavalry had been thrown into confusion by the Gallic horse and had fled. 7. Envoys sent by the enemy came to Caesar to treat for peace. 8. Caesar exhorted (pf.) the soldiers to fight bravely. 9. The soldiers were exhorted<sup>1</sup> by Caesar to sustain the attack of the enemy. 10. On the completion of the German war (abl. absol.) Caesar returned to Italy. 11. Having sent the cavalry ahead to prevent<sup>2</sup> the Germans from crossing,<sup>3</sup> Caesar hastened with all his forces to the bank of the river. Alarmed by his sudden arrival, the Germans<sup>4</sup> burnt<sup>5</sup> their ships and fled to their own territory. They then<sup>6</sup> began to devastate their fields, that the Roman army, through lack of corn, might not be able to remain.

<sup>1</sup>Remember that *cohortor* is a Deponent verb and is not Passive in meaning. <sup>2</sup>*prohibeo*. <sup>3</sup>Say, "to cross."

<sup>4</sup>Begin the sentence with this word to show connection with previous sentence.

<sup>5</sup>Instead of two co-ordinate verbs, "burnt" and "fled," Latin prefers to have only one main verb. Say, therefore, "their ships having been burnt, fled."

<sup>6</sup>Instead of saying "then," be more explicit and say, "when they arrived there." This will give you the word *there* with which to begin the sentence, and thus show the connection.



## LESSON XIII.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The Third Declension adjective takes the same termination as the noun of the Third Declension except that the Ablative Singular is usually *i* (instead of *e*) and the Genitive Plural *ium* (instead of *um*).

*Omnis* (all) is thus declined:

<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> omnis	omnis	omne
<i>Gen.</i> omnis	omnis	omnis
<i>Dat.</i> omni	omni	omni
<i>Acc.</i> omnem	omnem	omne
<i>Abl.</i> omni	omni	omni
<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> omnes	omnes	omnia
<i>Gen.</i> omnium	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i> omnibus	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i> omnes	omnes	omnia
<i>Abl.</i> omnibus	omnibus	omnibus

## TABLE OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERB.

*Moneo, I advise*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ moneo <i>Impf.</i> monebat	monere	monui <i>Plpf.</i> monuerat	monitum
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> moneat <i>Impf.</i> moneret		<i>Plpf.</i> monuisset	
<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Pres.</i> monere		<i>Perf.</i> monuisse	<i>Fut.</i> mon- [iturus esse

## PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> monetur	<i>Perf.</i> monitus est
	<i>Impf.</i> monebatur	<i>Plpf.</i> monitus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> moneatur	
	<i>Impf.</i> moneretur	<i>Plpf.</i> monitus esset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i> moneri		<i>Perf.</i> monitus esse

Observe the new Tenses: *monuerat*, he had advised; Passive, *monitus erat*, he had been advised.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>venio, venire, veni, ventum</b>	<i>to come</i>
<b>pervenio, pervenire, -veni, -ventum</b>	<i>to arrive</i>
<b>convenio, convenire, etc.</b>	<i>to come together</i>
<b>invenio, invenire, etc.</b>	<i>to come upon, find</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar in proelium sine scuto venerat. 2. Menapii sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. 3. Germani in fines Condrusiorum pervenerant. 4. Hostes castra vallo fossaque munierant. 5. Tencteri post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperant. 6. Caesar milites monuerat ut fortiter pugnarent. 7. Sugambri finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in silvas abdiderant. 8. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur. 9. Tencteri flumen transierunt atque, omnibus Menapiorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt. 10. Caesar cum vereretur ne Germani bellum renovarent statim equites prae-misit. Hi<sup>1</sup> millia quattuor passuum<sup>2</sup> progressi, cum hostes in collibus instructos conspexissent, statim

<sup>1</sup>"These," referring to *equites*, thus showing connection with previous sentence.

<sup>2</sup>Genitive plural of *passus*, pace. Four thousands of paces = four miles.

constiterunt. Illi<sup>3</sup> nostros esse perterritos arbitrati<sup>4</sup> impetum celeriter fecerunt eosque perturbaverunt.

<sup>3</sup>"Those" or "they," referring to the enemy, and showing connection with previous sentence.

<sup>4</sup>*veritus* and *arbitratus* are best translated by the Present Participle in English.

Translate into Latin:

1. On account of the departure of the Germans, the Menapii had moved back to their own villages. 2. The Germans had crossed the Rhine not far from the sea. 3. Caesar had warned the Germans not to cross into Gaul. 4. On account of the lack of corn Caesar had ended the war. 5. Because the winter was at hand the Romans had brought the war to a close. 6. Caesar had crossed the Rhine to help the Ubii. 7. Caesar had led his army across the Rhine for the purpose of overawing the Germans. 8. Caesar had waited five hours for the war-ships. 9. So great had been the storm that the ships could not hold their course. 10. Seventy-four<sup>1</sup> of<sup>2</sup> our cavalry are killed in that battle.<sup>3</sup> Piso Aquitanus, a man of aristocratic birth,<sup>4</sup> whose<sup>5</sup> grandfather had held the chief power in his own state, was among the slain.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Put "seventy-four" at the end of the sentence, so as to have it near Piso Aquitanus, who was one of the seventy-four. <sup>2</sup>*ex*.

<sup>3</sup>Put "in that battle" at the beginning, in order to show the connection with what went before. A battle has just been described.

<sup>4</sup>*vir generosus*. <sup>5</sup>*cuius*, Genitive case of the relative pronoun.

<sup>6</sup>For "among the slain" simply say "*in his*," and place this phrase immediately after "seventy-four."



## LESSON XIV.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

1. All Present Participles are declined like adjectives of the Third Declension.

Pugnans, *fighting*

	<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> pugnans	pugnans	pugnans
<i>Gen.</i> pugnantis	pugnantis	pugnantis
<i>Dat.</i> pugnanti	pugnanti	pugnanti
<i>Acc.</i> pugnantem	pugnantem	pugnans
<i>Abl.</i> pugnante (i)	pugnante (i)	pugnante (i)

	<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> pugnantes	pugnantes	pugnantia
<i>Gen.</i> pugnantium	pugnantium	pugnantium
<i>Dat.</i> pugnantibus	pugnantibus	pugnantibus
<i>Acc.</i> pugnantes	pugnantes	pugnantia
<i>Abl.</i> pugnantibus	pugnantibus	pugnantibus

2. The endings for the Present Participle of the four Conjugations are shown in the following list:

<i>First Conjugation</i>	pugnans, <i>fighting</i>
<i>Second Conjugation</i>	prohibens, <i>preventing</i>
<i>Third Conjugation</i>	petens, <i>seeking</i>
<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	veniens, <i>coming</i>

N. B.—The Present Participle expresses the same time as the main verb, *e.g.*,

*Fortissime pugnans interfectus est.* He was killed while fighting very bravely.

Here the Present Participle refers to the past because the main verb refers to the past.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>transiens</b>	<i>crossing</i>	<b>conans</b>	<i>attempting</i>
<b>stans</b>	<i>standing</i>	<b>decurrens</b>	<i>running down</i>
<b>discedens</b>	<i>departing</i>	<b>ducens</b>	<i>leading</i>
<b>facio, facere, feci, factum</b>			<i>to do, make</i>
<b>interficio, interficere, interfeci, interfectum</b>			<i>to kill</i>
<b>conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum</b>			<i>to complete</i>
<b>cedo, cedere, cessi, cessum</b>			<i>to retreat, yield</i>
<b>procedo, procedere, processi, processum</b>			<i>to go forward</i>
<b>discedo, discedere, discessi, discessum</b>			<i>to go away</i>
<b>accedo, accedere, accessi, accessum</b>			<i>to go to, ap- [proach</i>

## TABLE OF THIRD CONJUGATION VERB.

Duco, *I lead*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>duco</i>	<i>ducere</i>	<i>duxi</i>	<i>ductum</i>
	{ <i>Impf. ducebat</i>	<i>Plpf. duxerat</i>		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres. ducat</i>			
	{ <i>Impf. duceret</i>	<i>Plpf. duxisset</i>		
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>ducere</i>		<i>Perf. duxisse</i>	<i>Fut. ductu-</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>ducens</i>			<i>[rus esse</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres. ducitur (pl., ducun-</i>	<i>Pf. ductus est</i>
	<i>Impf. ducebatur tur)</i>	<i>Plpf. ductus erat</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres. ducatur</i>	
	{ <i>Impf. duceretur</i>	<i>Plpf. ductus esset</i>
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>duci</i>	<i>Pf. ductus esse</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>Pf. ductus, -a, -um</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar hostes flumen transeuntes<sup>1</sup> aggressus est.
2. Piso Aquitanus, vir generosus, pro castris pugnans interfectus est.
3. Nullo<sup>2</sup> hoste prohibente

<sup>1</sup>The Present Participles *iens* (going) and *transiens* (going across) change their spelling to *euntis* and *transeuntis*.

<sup>2</sup>The Ablative Absolute may be used with the Present Participle as well as with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Caesar flumen transiit. 4. Caesar ab hibernis in Italiam discedens legatis imperavit ut naves aedificarent. 5. Nostri Gallos audacissime flumen transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt. 6. Interea<sup>3</sup> Germani Caesarem nondum perfidiam suam audiisse arbitrati ad eum in castra postridie omnibus cum principibus venerunt. Hos<sup>4</sup> cum sine mora comprehendi jussisset, Caesar omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

<sup>3</sup>Just before this the Germans had treacherously attacked a detachment of Caesar's army during a truce.

<sup>4</sup>"These," Accusative Plural Masc. of the demonstrative *hic, haec, hoc*. It refers back to *principibus*, and is placed first to show connection between the two sentences.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar, fearing a rebellion<sup>1</sup> (on the part) of the Gauls, hastened from Italy with all his forces. 2. Standing on the walls, the women and children begged Caesar for peace. 3. Caesar passed through the province without hindrance from the enemy.<sup>2</sup> 4. Caesar attacked the Gauls (as they were) running down from the mountain into the valley. 5. The Gauls attacked Caesar (as he was) leading his men out of the woods. 6. When the German war was ended,<sup>3</sup> the Tencteri fled across the Rhine into the territory of the Sugambri and settled there. On learning this<sup>4</sup> Caesar made up his mind to cross the Rhine.

<sup>1</sup>*defectio, -onis*.

<sup>2</sup>Translate "without hindrance from the enemy" by means of the Abl. Abs.      <sup>3</sup>Abl. Abs.

<sup>4</sup>Say, "when he learned which" (*quod*), and begin the sentence with *quod* to show the connection with the previous sentence.



## LESSON XV.

## THE GERUND

The Gerund is formed from the Present Participle by changing *s* into *di*: thus,

<i>Present Part.</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
1st Conj. conjurans	conjurandi
2nd Conj. manens	manendi
3rd Conj. mittens	mittendi
4th Conj. muniens	muniendi

The Gerund is a verbal noun equal to the English verbal noun in *ing*. It has no Nominative and no Plural and is declined according to the Second Declension: thus,

<i>Nom.</i>	(wanting)
<i>Gen.</i>	conjurandi
<i>Dat.</i>	conjurando
<i>Acc.</i>	conjurandum
<i>Abl.</i>	conjurando

The Gerund translates the English verbal noun in *ing* when the latter is the object of a preposition: thus,

The reason of conspiring was this. *Causa conjurandi fuit haec.*

By conspiring the Gauls defeated the Romans. *Conjurando Galli Romanos superaverunt.*

## TABLE OF FOURTH CONJUGATION VERB.

*Munio, I fortify*

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Indic.</i> {	<i>munit</i>	<i>munire</i>	<i>munivit</i>	<i>munitum</i>
	<i>Impf.</i>	<i>muniebat</i>	<i>Plpf. muniverat</i>	
<i>Subj.</i> {	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>muniat</i>	<i>Perf. muniverit</i>	
	<i>Impf.</i>	<i>muniret</i>	<i>Plpf. munivisset</i>	
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		<i>munire</i>	<i>Pf. munivisse</i>	
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>muniens</i>		
<i>Gerundive</i>		<i>muniendi</i>		

## PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> munitur	<i>Pf.</i> munitus est
	<i>Impf.</i> muniebatur	<i>Plpf.</i> munitus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> muniatur	<i>Pf.</i> munitus sit
	<i>Impf.</i> muniretur	<i>Plpf.</i> munitus esset
<i>Inf.</i> <i>Pres.</i>	munire	<i>Pf.</i> munitus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>Pf.</i> munitus, -a, -um

## VOCABULARY.

<b>duco, ducere, duxi, ductum</b>	<i>to lead</i>
<b>produco, producere, produxi, productum</b>	<i>to lead forth</i>
<b>educo, educere, eduxi, eductum</b>	<i>to lead out</i>
<b>traduco, traducere, traduxi, traductum</b>	<i>to lead across</i>
<b>reduco, reducere, reduxi, reductum</b>	<i>to lead back</i>
<b>induco, inducere, induxi, inductum</b>	<i>to lead on</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Suebi centum milia armatorum bellandi causa<sup>1</sup> ex finibus quotannis educunt.
2. Magna pars equitatus praedandi causa Mosam transierat.
3. Tempestas erat idonea<sup>2</sup> ad navigandum.
4. Classis erat parata<sup>2</sup> ad navigandum.
5. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Remi legatos de pace ad Caesarem miserunt.
6. Hostes, ubi nostros in locum iniquum pugnandi causa non progredi viderunt, domum redire constituerunt.
7. Summa erat difficultas navigandi.
8. Spes praedandi studiumque bellandi Gallos ab agricultura revocabant.
9. Quotidie Sabinus, productis copiis, pugnandi potestatem fecit.
10. Ad celeritatem onerandi naves facit humiles.
11. Equites hostium acriter pugnaverunt tamen ut<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>For the purpose of; used as a preposition and governing the Genitive, and when so used always follows the word which it governs.

<sup>2</sup>*idoneus ad* = suitable for. *paratus ad* = prepared for.

<sup>3</sup>*ut* here introduces a result. The clause might be translated—"nevertheless the result was that our men had the best of it in every part of the field."

nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint.<sup>4</sup> 12. Ea,<sup>5</sup> quae secuta est, hieme Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi<sup>6</sup> fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur, et agri cultura prohibebantur.

<sup>4</sup>See new tense in the table.

<sup>5</sup>Notice that Caesar begins with "in that winter which followed," because the word "followed" carries the mind back to the events previously related, thus indicating the connection as usual.

<sup>6</sup>*transeundi* is the connecting word here. The connecting word is not always the very first word. As long as it is embodied in the first phrase, the connection is sufficiently clear.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar gave the captives an opportunity of departing. 2. Caesar set out from Italy with all his forces for the purpose of waging war.<sup>1</sup> 3. Caesar said that the Gauls were desirous<sup>2</sup> of making war. 4. Labienus sent word to Caesar that the ships were ready for sailing. 5. The cavalry of the enemy fought so (tam) fiercely that they threw<sup>3</sup> (pf.) our men into confusion. 6. Caesar said that he would take<sup>4</sup> a day for deliberating. 7. When Caesar was setting out for Italy, he sent Servius Galba into the territory of the Veragri with the tenth legion and part of the cavalry. The reason<sup>5</sup> for sending<sup>6</sup> him (eum) was this (haec).

<sup>1</sup>*bellare*.      <sup>2</sup>*cupidus* (governs the Genitive).

<sup>3</sup>In a clause of result, if a decisive, vigorous or instantaneous act is described, the Perfect Subjunctive may be used instead of the Imperfect.

<sup>4</sup>*sumere*.      <sup>5</sup>What is your connecting word here?

<sup>6</sup>Use the Genitive case. Why?



## LESSON XVI.

## THE GERUNDIVE.

1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and is formed from the Gerund by changing the termination into *us* for the Masculine, *a* for the Feminine, *um* for the Neuter. Thus from the Gerund *muniendi* is formed the Gerundive *muniendus*, which is declined as follows:

<i>Singular</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	muniendus	munienda	muniendum
<i>Gen.</i>	muniendi	muniendae	muniendi
<i>Dat.</i>	muniendo	muniendae	muniendo
<i>Acc.</i>	muniendum	muniendam	muniendum
<i>Abl.</i>	muniendo	munienda	muniendo
<i>Plural</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	muniendi	muniendae	munienda
<i>Gen.</i>	muniendorum	muniendarum	muniendorum
<i>Dat.</i>	muniendis	muniendis	muniendis
<i>Acc.</i>	muniendos	muniendas	munienda
<i>Abl.</i>	muniendis	muniendis	muniendis

2. The Gerundive, like the Gerund, translates the English verbal noun in *ing*, but the Gerundive is only to be used when the English verbal noun has an object after it: thus:

The reason for sending was this. *Causa mittendi erat haec* (gerund).

But,

The reason for sending the legion was this. *Causa legionis mittendae erat haec* (gerundive).

Observe that the Gerundive and the object of the English verbal noun in *ing* must always be the same Gender, Number and Case, and the Case is always the Case which you would use for the English verbal noun in *ing*.

## Another example:

The enemy crossed the river for the purpose of attacking the city. *Hostes urbis oppugnandae causa flumen transierunt.*

(a) The verbal noun (namely, "attacking") must be translated by the Gerundive (and not the Gerund), because it is followed by an object (namely, "city").

(b) Both "attacking" and "city" are to be in the same Gender, Number, and Case, when put into Latin.

(c) That Case is the Genitive because the preposition *causa* (for the purpose of) governs the Genitive, and the Number is Singular because "city" is Singular, and the Gender is Feminine because "city" is Feminine.

## Another example:

The soldiers were ready for attacking the villages. *Milites erant parati ad vicos oppugnandos.*

(a) The English verbal noun (namely, "attacking") is translated by the Gerundive.

(b) Both "attacking" and "villages" are to be in the same Gender, Number, and Case when put into Latin, and

(c) The Case this time is Accusative because the preposition *ad* governs the Accusative, and the Number is Plural because "villages" is Plural, and the Gender is Masculine because "villages" is Masculine.

Conjugation of *Capere*, to take

## ACTIVE VOICE.

	<b>capio</b>	<b>capere</b>	<b>cepi</b>	<b>captum</b>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capit (pl., cap-		<i>Perf.</i> cepit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> capiebat [ <i>iunt</i> )		<i>Plpf.</i> ceperat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capiat		<i>Pf.</i> ceperit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> caperet		<i>Plpf.</i> cepisset	
<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	capere	<i>Pf.</i> cepisse	<i>Fut.</i> capturus
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	capiens			[esse
<i>Gerund.</i>	capiendi			

## PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capitur <i>Impf.</i> capiebatur	<i>Perf.</i> captus est <i>Plpf.</i> captus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capiatur <i>Impf.</i> caperetur	<i>Perf.</i> captus sit <i>Plpf.</i> captus esset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	capere	<i>Perf.</i> captus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>Perf.</i> captus
<i>Gerundive</i>	capiendus, -a, -um	

N. B.—*Capere* is a verb of the Third Conjugation, but note the Tenses in the first column which are spelled like the Fourth Conjugation. *Facere*, to do, is like *capere*. Write out the table, omitting the first column of the Passive Voice.

Translate into English:

1. Galli sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles. 2. Navium magnam copiam ad<sup>1</sup> transportandum exercitum pollicebantur. 3. Dum in Gallia Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, legati Morinorum ad eum venerunt. 4. Caesar magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit. 5. Etsi (although) summa erat difficultas faciendi pontis, Caesar flumen transire statuit. 6. Britanni silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa muniunt, quo (where) incursionis hostium vitandae causa conveniunt. 7. In appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris officium praestabat. 8. Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. 9. Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam<sup>2</sup> ad senatum profectus est. 10. Caesar ad vexandos hostes ex castris profectus est. 11. Cum nostri in castra irrupissent, Germani timore perterriti fuga salutem petierunt, neque prius<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*ad* and Gerundive = *causa* and Gerundive.

<sup>2</sup>Preposition *ad* is omitted before the names of towns if "motion to" is meant.

<sup>3</sup>*prius* is to be taken with *quam* and the two together = the conjunction "before." Translate as if the sentence ran, *neque constituerunt priusquam ad*, etc.



constiterunt quam ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenerunt. Post hoc<sup>4</sup> proelium Caesar multis de causis Rhenum transire constituit, sed navibus transire non satis tutum esse arbitrabatur. Itaque<sup>5</sup>, etsi flumen erat latissimum atque altissimum, pontem facere constituit.

<sup>4</sup>Observe the connecting phrase.

<sup>5</sup>*Itaque* (and so) is the connecting word this time.

### Translate into Latin:

1. Labienus sent out the cavalry for the purpose of<sup>1</sup> devastating the fields of the Gauls. 2. Caesar sent out the tenth legion to attack the town.<sup>2</sup> 3. Labienus stays in Gaul for the purpose of (ad) collecting ships. 4. The difficulty of fortifying the place was very great. 5. Caesar advanced into the front rank for the purpose of exhorting the soldiers. 6. Caesar left the camp to exhort the tenth legion.<sup>3</sup> 7. Labienus set out from the camp in pursuit of Dumnorix. 8. Orgetorix<sup>4</sup> was by far the most influential<sup>5</sup> man amongst the Helvetii. Induced by a desire for supreme power he formed a conspiracy with the nobility<sup>6</sup> and persuaded the state to make war<sup>7</sup> on the Romans.

<sup>1</sup>Use *ad* (for the purpose of).

<sup>2</sup>Translate in two ways, using both *ad* and *causa* (for the purpose of).

<sup>3</sup>Translate in three ways (*ad*, *causa*, and *ut*).

<sup>4</sup>Arrange the sentence so as to have Orgetorix last; then begin the next sentence with "he" (*is*), and in this way the connection of the two sentences will be brought out.

<sup>5</sup>*potens*. <sup>6</sup>What case and why?

<sup>7</sup>*inferre bellum*=to wage war. This phrase takes a Dative of the person on whom one wages war. Are you to use the Infinitive in Latin here?

## LESSON XVII.

THE GERUNDIVE (*continued*).

1. Another use of the Gerundive is to translate the English "must" or "ought."

When thus used, it is joined to the verb "to be," and its meaning is always Passive, even with Deponent verbs: thus,

The soldiers must be recalled from the work. *Milites ab opere revocandi sunt.*

2. Observe that the English in the above sentence expresses present time. If the time is past, the English uses some such expression as:

The soldiers had to be recalled from the work.

The Latin expresses the past time here by simply changing *sunt* to *erant*: thus,

*Milites ab opere revocandi erant.*

3. If such a sentence as the above has to be put into the Accusative and Infinitive construction, the verb "to be" will, of course, be changed to the Infinitive Mood, *milites* would be Accusative, and *revocandi* would become *revocandos* to agree with it.

4. The person by whom a thing is to be done is expressed by the Dative instead of *a* with the Ablative.

Conjugation of *Esse, to be*

	sum	esse	fui	Supine (wanting)
Indic.	{	Pres. est (pl., <i>sunt</i> )	Pf. fuit	
		Impf. erat	Plpf. fuerat	
Subj.	{	Pres. sit	Pf. fuerit	
		Impf. esset	Plpf. fuisset	
Infinitive	Pres.	esse	Pf. fuisse	Fut. futurus, [-a, -um esse]
Participle	Pres.	(wanting)	Pf. (wanting)	Fut. futurus, [-a, -um]

## Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Legati ad Caesarem statim mittendi sunt. 2. Castra militibus sine mora munienda sunt. 3. Carthago delenda est. 4. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda. 5. Vexillum proponendum erat. 6. Signum tuba dandum erat. 7. Acies instruenda erat. 8. Milites cohortandi erant. 9. Cato dicebat Carthaginem esse delendam. 10. Labienus dixit legatos ad se Ariovisto mittendos esse. 11. Nuntii dicunt omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transiisse; auxilium statim esse mittendum. 12. Germanico bello confecto Caesar in Britanniam transire constituit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat. Itaque<sup>1</sup> ad insulam explorandam Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Ipse<sup>2</sup> cum omnibus copiis in Morinos contendit quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc<sup>3</sup> naves undique ex finitimis regionibus jubet convenire.

<sup>1</sup>This conjunction gives connection, but *insulam* also takes you back to *Britanniam*.

<sup>2</sup>*ipse* (he himself) shows connection here, because the last verb in the previous sentence has the same "he" (viz., Caesar) for its subject.

<sup>3</sup>*huc* (hither) shows the connection because it refers to the territory of the Morini mentioned in the previous sentence.

## Translate into Latin:

1. The city must be attacked immediately. 2. The camp of the enemy must be attacked immediately,<sup>1</sup> said Labienus. 3. Caesar made up his mind that he<sup>2</sup> ought to cross<sup>3</sup> the Rhine. 4. Our men did not

<sup>1</sup>Begin thus, "Labienus said that the camp," etc.

<sup>2</sup>The Dative of *se* is *sibi*.

<sup>3</sup>If the English verb with "must" or "ought" is in the Active Voice, the sentence must be changed into the Passive before translating it into Latin, thus:

Caesar ought to send out the cavalry.

The cavalry ought to be sent out by Caesar (*equitatus Caesari emittendus est*)



give the enemy an opportunity of jumping down from their chariots. 5. They said that the time for deliberating<sup>4</sup> was short. 6. The villages of the Gauls must be burned and their fields laid waste. 7. Caesar said that Dumnorix must be coerced. 8. The camp must be moved at daybreak. 9. The Romans crossed the Rhine for the purpose of waging war with<sup>5</sup> the Germans. 10. Then he persuades a Gaul with great rewards to carry a letter to Cicero. He sends it<sup>6</sup> written in Greek characters so that, if the letter should be intercepted,<sup>7</sup> our plans may not be discovered by the enemy.

<sup>4</sup>Genitive. Why?    <sup>5</sup>*gerere bellum cum* = to wage war with.

<sup>6</sup>*hanc* (this) should be placed first.

<sup>7</sup>Translate this clause by the Abl. Abs.

## LESSON XVIII.

### DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

Learn by heart the following interrogatives:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid	} <i>who, which, or what?</i> (pron.)
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid	
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	} <i>who, which, or what?</i> (adj.)
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	
<i>Nom.</i>	quantus	quanta	quantum	} <i>how great?</i> (adj., 1st and 2nd decl.)
<i>Acc.</i>	quantum	quantam	quantum	
<i>Nom.</i>	qualis	qualis	quale	} <i>of what kind?</i> (adj., 3rd decl.)
<i>Acc.</i>	qualem	qualem	quale	
	quot (indeclinable)			
	<i>how many?</i> (adj.)			

*Plurals*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quos	quas	quae
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quos	quas	quae
<i>Nom.</i>	quanti	quantae	quanta
<i>Acc.</i>	quantos	quantas	quanta
<i>Nom.</i>	quales	quales	qualia
<i>Acc.</i>	quales	quales	qualia

“How great is the island?” is a direct question.

Caesar was not able to discover how great the island was.

“How great the island was,” is a dependent question, and is translated into Latin thus:

*Caesar reperire non poterat quanta esset insula.*

A dependent question must begin with an interrogative, and the verb must always be Subjunctive Mood.

Conjugation of *Posse*, to be able

<i>possum</i>	<i>posse</i>	<i>potui</i>
<i>Indic.</i> {	<i>Pres.</i> potest	<i>Pf.</i> potuit
	<i>Impf.</i> poterat	<i>Plpf.</i> potuerat
<i>Subj.</i> {	<i>Pres.</i> possit	<i>Pf.</i> potuerit
	<i>Impf.</i> posset	<i>Plpf.</i> potuisset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>posse</i>	<i>Pf.</i> potuisse

Translate into English:

1. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quantae nationes incolerent reperire poterat. 2. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, ostendit. 3. Caesar intellegebat quae res Indutiomarus ab instituto consilio deterreret. 4. Galli mercatores in oppidis circumstant et quid audierint quaerunt. 5. Cum ab Remis quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello

possent sic reperiebat. 6. Caesar Labienum in continente reliquit ut quae in Gallia gererentur cognosceret. 7. Omnibus rebus ad navigandum constitutis tertia fere vigilia naves solvit,<sup>1</sup> et hora circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit. Reliquae<sup>2</sup> naves cum nondum in conspectu essent, ad horam nonam in ancoris expectare constituit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, quae facienda essent<sup>3</sup> ostendit, monuitque ut ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum<sup>4</sup> septem ab eo loco progressus in aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*naves solvit* = loosened the ships, weighed anchor, set sail.

<sup>2</sup>Show how the connection is brought out at the beginning of each sentence in this selection.      <sup>3</sup>Why Subjunctive?

<sup>4</sup>Gen. Pl. of *passus*, a pace. 1,000 paces = 1 mile.

<sup>5</sup>Stationed.

### Translate into Latin:

1. Labienus was left on the continent to find out what states were conspiring against the Roman people. 2. Caesar learnt from captives where the enemy were. 3. The captives told Caesar how many states were in arms. 4. The ambassadors informed Labienus how many states had crossed the Rhine. 5. Caesar learnt from Volusenus what was being done in Britain. 6. Caesar learned from captives what the character (*qualis*) of Ambiorix was. 7. Caesar was unable to discover the size of the island.<sup>1</sup> 8. The general discovered the position of the harbours.<sup>1</sup> 9. Merchants told Caesar what the nature (*qualis*) of the island was. 10. So great was the valour of the soldiers that not even<sup>2</sup> the wounded left the battle. 11. Caesar's unexpected appearance on the banks of the Rhine terrified the Germans.

<sup>1</sup>Translate by means of a dependent question.

<sup>2</sup>Not even, *ne.....quidem*, with the emphatic word placed between.



## LESSON XIX.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

qui, quae, quod, *who, which, what*

*Singular*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i> quo	qua	quo

*Plural*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>Dat.</i> quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quos	quas	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quibus	quibus	quibus

1. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case. The Case of the relative depends on the construction of its own clause. Sometimes it is the subject of the verb, sometimes the object of the verb, and sometimes the object of a preposition: thus,

(a) *Germani Menapios oppresserunt qui trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant.* The Germans surprised the Menanii who had moved back to their villages across the Rhine.

(b) *Milites quos Caesar in castris reliquerat omnes interfecti sunt.* The soldiers whom Caesar had left in the camp were all slain.

(c) *Agri, per quos exercitus Romanus iter faciebat, ab hostibus vastati erant.* The fields, through which

the Roman army was marching, had been devastated by the enemy.

(d) *Legati, qui ad Caesarem venerant, ita dixerunt.* The ambassadors who had come to Caesar spoke as follows.

2. In (a) the antecedent, *Menapios*, is Accusative, and the relative is Nominative, being the subject of *remigraverant*.

In (b) the antecedent, *milites*, is Nominative, while the relative is Accusative, governed by *reliquerat*.

In (c) the antecedent, *agri*, is Nominative, while the relative is Accusative governed by *per*.

In (d) the relative is Nominative, because it is the subject of *venerant*, not because the antecedent is Nominative.

Observe, however, that in every example the relative agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number and Person.

Table of the verb *Facere*, to do or make.

#### ACTIVE VOICE

	facio	facere	fecit	factum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> facit ( <i>pl.</i> , faci-		<i>Pf.</i> fecit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> faciebat [unt)		<i>Plpf.</i> fecerat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> faciat		<i>Pf.</i> fecerit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> faceret		<i>Plpf.</i> fecisset	<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	facere		<i>Pf.</i> fecisse	facturus, -a, [-um esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	faciens			facturus, -a,
<i>Gerund.</i>	faciendi			[-um

#### PASSIVE VOICE

	fio	fieri	factus sum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> fit ( <i>pl.</i> , fiunt)		<i>Pf.</i> factus est
	{ <i>Impf.</i> fiebat		<i>Plpf.</i> factus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> fiat		<i>Pf.</i> factus sit
	{ <i>Impf.</i> fieret		<i>Plpf.</i> factus esset
<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	fieri		<i>Pf.</i> factus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	(wanting)		<i>Pf.</i> factus
<i>Gerundive</i>	faciendus, -a, -um		

*Facere* is a verb of the Third Conjugation, but it has several tenses like the Fourth, and in the Passive Voice the tenses in the first column are Active in form.

Translate into English, accounting for the Gender, Number and Case of each relative:

1. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, agros colunt. 2. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt. 3. Menapii tantae multitudinis adventu perterriti, ex iis (those) aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt. 4. Germani in fines Condrusiorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. 5. Ii (those), qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant. 6. Caesar iis (to those), quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. 7. Omnes, qui arma ferre poterant, in unum locum convenerunt. 8. In Britanniam mittit Commium qui regnum in his (these) regionibus obtinebat et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur. 9. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt. 10. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar commands (impero) the Senones, who were adjacent<sup>1</sup> to the Belgae, to send hostages to him. 2. Iccius Remus, who was in command of the town at that time, sent a messenger to Caesar. 3. After burning the villages which they were able to

<sup>1</sup>*finitimus*.



approach (adire & acc.) they hastened with all their forces against the camp of Caesar. 4. Leaving in the camp the two legions which he had last enrolled, Caesar led the remaining six against the enemy. 5. All who were able to bear arms were put to death. 6. He himself determined to pass the winter in the village of the Venagri which is called Octodurus. 7. The tenth legion, which Caesar had sent out to forage, returned at daybreak. 8. Brutus, who was in command of the fleet, did not know what to do.<sup>2</sup> 9. The Morini, against whom Caesar had sent out the cavalry, had hidden themselves by night in the woods. 10. On his arrival Caesar found his suspicions verified.<sup>3</sup> 11. In the fall of the year Caesar returned to Italy to keep an eye on events at the Capitol.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>2</sup>Dependent question.

<sup>3</sup>Say, "found that what he suspected would happen had happened."  
<sup>4</sup>Dependent question.

## LESSON XX.

### THE RELATIVE (*continued*).

1. After a verb of motion the relative may be used with the Subjunctive instead of *ut* to express purpose: thus,

*Galli ad Caesarem miserunt legatos qui pacem peterent.* The Gauls sent ambassadors to Caesar who were to ask for peace.

2. The relative has its verb in the Subjunctive Mood, if it depends on a clause which is in the Accusative and Infinitive construction: thus,

*Dumnorix affirmavit Caesarem legatos, qui essent in castris, necaturum.* Dumnorix asserted that Caesar intended to kill the ambassadors who were in the camp.

Table of the verb *Fero*.

fero,	ferre,	tuli,	latum
	ferat	tuleram	
	ferebat	tulerim	
	ferret	tulissem	
	ferre	tulisse	laturus esse
	ferens		laturus, -a, -um
	ferendi		

The Imperfect Subjunctive is most easily formed by adding *t* to the Present Infinitive.

## Translate into English:

1. Germani responderunt in terris esse neminem,<sup>1</sup> quem non superare possent. 2. Caesar dixit nullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim<sup>2</sup> multitudini sine injuria possent. 3. Caesar nuntium misit qui consilia Labieno nuntiaret. 4. Ad Germanos Caesar nuntios misit, qui obsides postularent. 5. Ad quos<sup>3</sup> Caesar nuntios misit, qui obsides postularent. 6. Ad quos Caesar nuntios misit, qui postularent ut sibi obsides darent. 7. Ad quos Caesar nuntios misit, qui postularent ut eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent. 8. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, eos,<sup>4</sup> qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire.

<sup>1</sup>Put last in the clause for emphasis.    <sup>2</sup>Why this position?

<sup>3</sup>To them. Latin often uses the relative at the beginning of a sentence when the English would have only a personal or demonstrative pronoun. This is called the connective relative.

<sup>4</sup>*ut* is often omitted.

## Translate into Latin:

1. The scout brought back word that all who were able to bear arms had assembled into one place. 2. Caesar sent forward scouts to investigate the matter. 3. Caesar sent forward scouts to choose a place for

a camp.<sup>1</sup> 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for aid.<sup>1</sup> 5. The messenger said that the Menapii had departed from the villages which they had across the Rhine. 6. The scout reported that the enemy's cavalry which had gone across the Meuse to forage had not yet<sup>2</sup> returned. 7. The ambassadors said that the Roman soldiers had burnt all the villages which they were able to approach (adire). 8. There was a report that all who were able to bear arms had been put to death.

<sup>1</sup>Translate in four ways.      <sup>2</sup>*nondum*.

## LESSON XXI.

### PRAEFICIO, INFERO, AND IMPERO.

1. *Praeficio* (I place in command of) takes the Accusative of the person placed in command, and the Dative of the thing over which he is placed in command: thus,

*Caesar Labienum oppido praeficit.* Caesar places Labienus in command of the town.

2. *Infero bellum* (I make war upon) takes a Dative of the person upon whom war is made: thus,

*Galli Populo Romano bellum intulerunt.* The Gauls made war on the Roman people.

3. *Impero* (in the sense of "I demand") takes an Accusative of the thing demanded and a Dative of the person from whom the thing is demanded: thus.

*Caesar obsides civitati imperat.* Caesar demands hostages from the state.

Table of the verb *Infero*.

	<i>infero</i>	<i>inferre</i>	<i>intuli</i>	<i>illatum</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> infert (pl., <i>infer-</i>	<i>Pf.</i> intulit		
	{ <i>Impf.</i> inferebat [ <i>unt</i> )	<i>Plpf.</i> intulerat		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> inferat	<i>Pf.</i> intulerit		
	{ <i>Impf.</i> inferret	<i>Plpf.</i> intulisset	<i>Fut.</i>	
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>inferre</i>	<i>Pf.</i> intulisse	<i>illaturus</i>	
			esse	
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>inferens</i>	<i>Pf.</i> (wanting)	<i>illaturus</i>	
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>inferendi</i>			

## Translate into English:

1. Legati responderunt Germanos non priores populo Romano bellum inferre. 2. Caesar a Germanis postulavit ut eos, qui Galliae bellum intulissent, sibi dederent. 3. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, Rhenum exercitum traducere constituit ut Germanis metum injiceret.<sup>1</sup> 4. Caesar obsides, quos Britannis imperaverat, in continentem adduci jussit. 5. Caesar legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, ut naves quam plurimas hieme aedificarent. 6. Ipse in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo<sup>2</sup> cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire jubet. Qua re<sup>3</sup> nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant sese paratos esse omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere.

<sup>1</sup>Takes same construction as *infero*, i.e., Acc. and Dat.

<sup>2</sup>Observe the connecting word.

<sup>3</sup>Abl. of *res*. Observe how the connection is indicated.

## Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar determined to make war on the Germans. 2. When he came to the province he demanded hostages from all the states. 3. Caesar placed Labienus in charge of the fortifications which he had made.



4. Having appointed Labienus to the command of the legions, Caesar returned to Italy. 5. When the Gauls had determined to make war on the Roman people they sent messengers to Britain to ask for help. 6. Having overawed<sup>1</sup> the Germans, Caesar led his army back across the Rhine. 7. Placing a lieutenant in charge of the ships, Caesar returned to the camp. On arriving there<sup>2</sup> he found that the Britons had mobilized their forces and were making preparations for war.

<sup>1</sup>*injicere.*      <sup>2</sup>Connecting word.

## LESSON XXII.

### THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

1. In English, if a verb is intransitive it cannot be used in the Passive Voice, but in Latin an intransitive verb may be used in the Passive if it is used impersonally. Thus, instead of saying,

*Milites acriter pugnauerunt,* The soldiers fought fiercely,

a common construction is,

*A militibus acriter pugnatum est,* It was fought fiercely by the soldiers.

2. Only those verbs which govern the Accusative Case are transitive in Latin; therefore, if it is necessary to use the Passive of a verb that governs the Dative, the impersonal construction must be used: thus,

The ambassadors were persuaded to come,  
must be turned into,

It was persuaded to the ambassadors to come. *Per-suasum est legatis ut venirent.*

3. The following verbs govern the Dative and therefore must never be used in the Passive Voice except impersonally:

- (a) persuadeo persuadere *to persuade*  
 (b) noceo nocere *to injure*  
 (c) ignosco ignoscere *to pardon*  
 (d) parco parcere *to spare*  
 (e) impero imperare *to command (a person)*

Instead of saying:

The ships are injured.

The Gauls were pardoned.

The Gauls were persuaded.

Say:

It is injured to the ships. *Navibus nocetur.*

It was pardoned to the Gauls. *Gallis ignotum est.*

It was persuaded to the Gauls. *Gallis persuasum est.*

Table of the Passive Voice of the verb Vocare.

	vocor	vocari		vocatus sum
Indic.	{	Pres. vocatur	Pf.	vocatus est
		Impf. vocabatur	Plpf.	vocatus erat
		Fut. vocabitur	Plpf.	vocatus erit
Subj.	{	Pres. vocetur	Pf.	vocatus sit
		Impf. vocaretur	Plpf.	vocatus esset
Infin. Pres.		vocari	Pf.	vocatus esse
Part. Pres.			Pf.	vocatus
Gerundive		vocandus, -a, -um		

Translate into English:

- Gallis persuasum est Romanos sibi bellum inferre constituisse.
- Simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu<sup>1</sup> cognitum est, Cingetorix ad eum venit.
- Exploratores, ut<sup>2</sup> erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt.
- Accessum est<sup>4</sup> ad Britanniam omnibus navibus prima luce neque in eo loco hostis est visus.
- Toto hoc<sup>3</sup> in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicatur,<sup>4</sup> intellectum est<sup>4</sup> nostros propter gravitatem ar-

<sup>1</sup>Abl of *adventus*.      <sup>2</sup>ut with the Indicative = *as*.

<sup>3</sup>This.      <sup>4</sup>Impersonal subject, "it."

morum non aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem. 6. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. 7. Bellovacis persuaderi ut manerent non poterat. 8. Nervii Atrebatibus persuaserant ut castra Romana oppugnarent. 9. Capto oppido Caesar omnibus mulieribus liberisque pepercit. 10. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen<sup>5</sup> quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere poterant magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero,<sup>6</sup> notis omnibus vadis, audacissime nostros adoriebantur. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar scaphas longarum navium militibus compleri jussit et quos laborantes conspexerat his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul atque in arido constiterunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt.

<sup>5</sup>The connecting word is *tamen* (nevertheless), that is, notwithstanding the fact mentioned in the previous sentence.

<sup>6</sup>Both *hostes* and *vero* help the connection. *Hostes* is in contrast with *nostri* at the beginning of the previous sentence, and *vero* = on the other hand.

### Translate into Latin:

1. The Gauls begged that they might be pardoned.
2. On account of the indiscretion of the common people the state was pardoned by Caesar.
3. A report was brought<sup>1</sup> to Caesar that the Gauls had again entered upon hostilities.
4. Caesar was told<sup>1</sup> that the cavalry of the enemy had crossed the river.
5. It was evident that our cavalry was not able to sustain the attack of the enemy.
6. There a fierce battle took place.
7. It was not possible<sup>2</sup> to persuade the cavalry to sustain the attack of the enemy.
8. The Nervii persuaded their neighbours to make war

<sup>1</sup>It was announced.

<sup>2</sup>*poterat*. When this verb is used impersonally the dependent Infinitive must be Passive Voice. Say, therefore, "It was not possible to be persuaded."

on the Roman people. 9. As<sup>3</sup> our soldiers were wavering,<sup>4</sup> the standard-bearer of the tenth legion threw himself from the ship and began to carry the standard against the enemy. Then our men, exhorting one another<sup>5</sup> to follow without delay, jumped overboard<sup>6</sup> in a body.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>3</sup>Use Ablative Absolute.      <sup>4</sup>*cunctari*.      <sup>5</sup>*inter se*.

<sup>6</sup>Translate the meaning.

<sup>7</sup>Use the adjective *universus* (all together).

## LESSON XXIII.

### IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION (*continued*).

1. It has been said that an intransitive verb, if used in the Passive Voice, must be used impersonally. It follows that the Gerundive of intransitive verbs must always be used impersonally, because the Gerundive is always Passive Voice.

They had to jump down from the ships,  
must be changed to,

It had to be jumped from the ships. *De navibus desiliendum erat.*

Table of the Passive Voice of the verb *Jubeo*.

	jubeor	juberi		jussus sum
<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> jubetur	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus est
		<i>Impf.</i> jubebatur	<i>Plpf.</i>	jussus erat
		<i>Fut.</i> jubebitur	<i>Ftppf.</i>	jussus erit
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> jubeatur	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus sit
		<i>Impf.</i> juberetur	<i>Plpf.</i>	jussus esset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		juberi	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus
<i>Gerundive</i>		jubendus, -a, -um		



Declension of *Is, ea, id* (*this, that, he, she, it*).

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i> <i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ii</i>	<i>eae</i> <i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>eorum</i>	<i>earum</i> <i>eorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i> <i>eis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>eas</i> <i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eo</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>eo</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i> <i>eis</i>

Declension of reflexive pronoun *Sui*.

*Singular and Plural, All Genders*

*Nom.* (wanting)

*Gen.* *sui*

*Dat.* *sibi*

*Acc.* *se, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

*Abl.* *se*

Translate into English:

1. Militibus<sup>1</sup> simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum. 2. Imperator dixit militibus pugnandum esse aut moriendum. 3. Caesar dixit mulieribus<sup>3</sup> liberisque parcendum esse. 4. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent.<sup>2</sup> 5. Tantamque opinionem timoris praebeuit, ut jam ad vallum castrorum hostes accederent. Id<sup>4</sup> ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente qui summam imperii teneret,<sup>2</sup> nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato<sup>1</sup> dimicandum non existimabat.

<sup>1</sup>In the Gerundive construction the person by whom the thing has to be done is in the Dative.    <sup>2</sup>Why Subjunctive?

<sup>3</sup>The meaning of the sentence as a whole shows that this is *not* the Dative of the person by whom the thing is to be done.

<sup>4</sup>Connecting word.

## Translate into Latin:

1. The women and children must not be injured.  
 2. Caesar said that the women and children must not be injured. 3. Caesar made up his mind that he ought to cross the Rhine. 4. On account of the unevenness of the ground it was impossible to resist the enemy (*resistere* governs the Dative). 5. On the next day Caesar sent<sup>1</sup> Labienus with those legions which he had brought back from Britain, against the Morini, who had again entered upon hostilities. As they<sup>2</sup> had no place to retreat to<sup>3</sup> on account of the dryness of their swamps, they all fell into<sup>4</sup> his<sup>5</sup> hands.

<sup>1</sup>The main verb is generally placed at the end of the whole sentence.

<sup>2</sup>Begin with *qui* (who) in order to mark the connection.

<sup>3</sup>Say, "who since they had not where (*quo*) they could retreat."

<sup>4</sup>Say, "came into the power."

<sup>5</sup>This is too indefinite. Say, "of Labienus."

## LESSON XXIV.

## DEMONSTRATIVES.

Table of *Hic, haec, hoc, this* (near by, in contrast to *that* farther away).

	Singular			Plural		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>horum</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>horum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hos</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hac</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

Table of Ille, illa, illud, *that* (farther away, in contrast to this near by).

Singular			Plural		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
Gen. illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat. illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Acc. illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
Abl. illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

Table of the Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation verb, *Duco*.

	ducor	duci		ductus sum
Indic.	{ Pres.	ducitur	Pf.	ductus est
	{ Impf.	ducebatur	Plpf.	ductus erat
	{ Fut.	ducetur	Ftperf.	ductus erit
Subj.	{ Pres.	ducatur	Pf.	ductus sit
	{ Impf.	duceretur	Plpf.	ductus esset
Infinitive Pres.	duci		Pf.	ductus esse
Part. Pres.	(wanting)		Pf.	ductus
Gerundive	ducendus, -a, -um			

Translate into English:

1. Menap̄ii tantae multitudinis adventu perterriti ex iis<sup>1</sup> aedificiis quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi<sup>2</sup> omnia experti, cum propter custodias Menap̄iorum non transire possent, domum reverterunt. 2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is,<sup>3</sup> M. Messalla et M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit. 3. Caesar iis,<sup>4</sup> quos

<sup>1</sup>*is, ea id*, is generally the demonstrative used when a relative clause follows.

<sup>2</sup>*ille*, when used to introduce a period, indicates that the subject is different from the subject of the previous sentence. *Menap̄ii* is the subject of the previous sentence, *illi* shows that 'the Germans' is the subject of this clause.

<sup>3</sup>Unlike *ille*, *is* does not indicate change of subject, but merely helps the connection by referring back to Orgetorix.

<sup>4</sup>Decline every pronoun in these three sentences and point out what duty they perform.

in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His<sup>5</sup> Caesar libertatem concessit. 4. Caesar et Hannibal erant duo imperatores magni; hunc<sup>6</sup> Romani oderant, illum<sup>6</sup> admirati sunt.

<sup>5</sup>*hic* always refers to the nearest. In this case it refers to the subject of *dixerunt*, the word immediately preceding. *hic* is, therefore, often the right word with which to begin a sentence in order to show connection.

<sup>6</sup>When a contrast is to be brought out, *hic* always refers to the nearest, in this case Hannibal; *ille* to what is more remote, in this case Caesar. *hic* is therefore equal to *the latter*, and *ille* to *the former*.

### Translate into Latin:

1. Cicero and Demosthenes were two great orators; the latter was a Greek, the former a Roman. 2. After their defeat<sup>1</sup> the enemy<sup>2</sup> at once dispatched envoys to Caesar to treat for peace. They<sup>3</sup> promised to give hostages and to comply with his demands. This<sup>4</sup> embassy was accompanied by Commius Atrebas, who had been sent in advance to Britain by Caesar. Although<sup>5</sup> he came as an ambassador<sup>6</sup> with orders from Caesar they had seized him as he landed on their shores,<sup>7</sup> and had bound him with fetters, and now that they had fought and lost<sup>8</sup> they had sent him<sup>9</sup> back.

<sup>1</sup>Say, "having been defeated."

<sup>2</sup>Begin with the subject and add "in the battle," to be precise.

<sup>3</sup>As there is no change in the subject, just go on with your verb in the Third Plural.

<sup>4</sup>Along with these ambassadors came.

<sup>5</sup>Begin with *him* to show connection, and use *hic*, the man just mentioned.

<sup>6</sup>For "came as an ambassador," etc., say, "was bringing Caesar's orders in the character of an ambassador" (*modo oratoris*).

<sup>7</sup>Say simply, "having come out of the ship" (*egredior*).

<sup>8</sup>Say, "then the battle being fought, they sent him back." It is not necessary to say they lost the battle. This idea has been clearly brought out in the beginning of the passage.

<sup>9</sup>The *him* at the head of the sentence will do for all.



## LESSON XXV.

CONSTRUCTION OF *Cum*.

1. *Cum*, meaning *since* or *although*, takes the Subjunctive without exception.

2. *Cum*, meaning *when*, generally takes the Subjunctive, if the Tense is Imperfect or Pluperfect, but if the action is described as happening an indefinite number of times in the past, *cum* is used with the Pluperfect Indicative, and the principal verb will then be Imperfect Indicative: thus,

(a) *Cum urbem cepisset, mulieres liberosque trucidavit.* When he took the city, he killed the women and children.

(b) *Cum urbem ceperat, mulieres liberosque trucidabat.* When he took a city, he used to kill the women and children.

In (a) the action of taking the city and killing the women and children happened only once, in (b) it happened an indefinite number of times.

Table of the Passive of the verb, *Munire*

	<i>munior</i>	<i>muniri</i>	<i>munitus sum</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> <i>munitur</i>	<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus est</i>
		<i>Impf.</i> <i>muniebatur</i>	<i>Plpf.</i> <i>munitus erat</i>
		<i>Fut.</i> <i>munietur</i>	<i>Ftperf.</i> <i>munitus erit</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> <i>muniatur</i>	<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus sit</i>
		<i>Impf.</i> <i>muniretur</i>	<i>Plpf.</i> <i>munitus esset</i>
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>		<i>muniri</i>	<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus esse</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus</i>
<i>Gerundive</i>		<i>munierendus, -a, -um</i>	

Translate into English:

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, magnopere perturba-

bantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, cum<sup>1</sup> ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumstebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset<sup>2</sup> Caesar, scaphas longarum navium item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerant,<sup>3</sup> his subsidia submittebat.

<sup>1</sup>Observe that the action described happened an indefinite number of times, and so we have the subordinate verb *conspexerant* in the Pluperfect Indicative, while the main verbs are all in the Imperfect Indicative, namely, *adoriebantur*, *circumstebant* and *conjiciebant*.

<sup>2</sup>Here the action is not described as happening often.

<sup>3</sup>Here again we have the Pluperfect Indicative (*submittebat*) in the subordinate clause and the Imperfect Indicative (*conspexerant*) in the main clause, because again the action is represented as happening over and over again. Observe that the relative *quos* takes the place of *cum*, because "whomsoever he saw (from time to time) in difficulties, to these he kept sending reinforcements," is the same as "when he saw (from time to time) any in difficulties, to these he kept sending reinforcements."

### Translate into Latin:

Caesar was unable to bring the war with the Veneti to a close,<sup>1</sup> for as fast as he captured their towns, they would<sup>2</sup> carry off all their property and retreat in their ships to the nearest promontory,<sup>3</sup> and there they would again defend themselves with the same advantages of position as before.<sup>4</sup> They kept up these manoeuvres<sup>5</sup> very easily during a great part of the summer, owing to the fact that<sup>6</sup> our ships were

<sup>1</sup>*finire*.

<sup>2</sup>"would" is here simply an idiomatic use of the word to express frequent action.

<sup>3</sup>*promunturium*. <sup>4</sup>No need to express "as before."

<sup>5</sup>Say simply, "they kept doing (Imperf. of *facio*) these things," beginning the sentence, of course, with "these things" to show connection as usual.

<sup>6</sup>Translate the meaning of "owing to the fact that" by one simple conjunction.

detained by a spell of bad weather,<sup>7</sup> and<sup>8</sup> because navigation<sup>9</sup> was very difficult in a vast and open sea with great tides and no harbours to speak of.<sup>10</sup>

<sup>7</sup>Plural of *tempestas* will do.

<sup>8</sup>Use *que* for "and." When two clauses are joined by *que* they are of the same nature, and therefore there will be no need to express "because" again.

<sup>9</sup>Gerund of *navigare*.

<sup>10</sup>Say, "the tides (being) great, the harbours almost none" (Ablative Absolute).

## LESSON XXVI.

### CONSTRUCTION OF *Dum* AND *Priusquam*.

1. *Dum* (while) takes the Present Indicative when the meaning is that while one action was going on, another action took place or was taking place.

*Dum ea Romani parant, jam Saguntum oppugnabatur.* While the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was already being besieged.

2. *Dum* (until) takes the Subjunctive if a purpose is implied.

*Dum naves convenirent, expectavit.* He waited until the ships should assemble.

Subjunctive with *dum* because he waited for a certain purpose, namely, in order to give the ships time to assemble.

3. *Priusquam* (before) takes the Subjunctive if there is an end (purpose) in view or an end prevented.

*Priusquam consilium cognoscerent, exercitum traduxit.* Before they could learn his intention, he led his army across.

Subjunctive with *priusquam* because his purpose was to keep them in the dark with regard to his plan until he led his army over.

4. If *dum* (until) and *priusquam* (before) do not signify a purpose, they will take the Indicative.

*In proelio mansit dum pater interfectus est.* He remained in the battle till his father was killed.

This does not mean that he remained in the battle for the purpose of seeing his father killed. If it did, *dum* would have the Subiunctive.

5. *Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervenit.* Night came on before the battle was fought.

This means that the battle was not fought; *i.e.*, the end (*viz.*, the battle) was prevented.

N. B.—The Past Tense for a Subjunctive of purpose is the Imperfect.

Translate into English:

1. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, quid ageretur,<sup>1</sup> sentiret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt. 2. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,<sup>2</sup> idoneum esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. 3. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt. 4. Dum Romani tempus terunt legionibus mittendis, Hannibal paucorum militibus dierum<sup>3</sup> quietem dedit. 5. Caesar non expectandum<sup>4</sup> sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santones Helvetii pervenirent.

<sup>1</sup>Account for the Subjunctives in this exercise.

<sup>2</sup>*periculum facere* = to run any risk.

<sup>3</sup>Gen. Pl. of *dies*.

<sup>4</sup>What is the subject of this verb?

Translate into Latin:

1. Making a hasty march of eight miles he arrived at the camp of the Germans before they could receive intelligence of his movements. 2. Caesar de-



terminated to wait till the soldiers, whom he had demanded from the province, got time to assemble.

3. Caesar resolved to lead his army into Gaul before any more states should enter into the conspiracy.

4. The enemy beat a retreat and did not cease their flight till they reached the Rhine. 5. Whilst he was making these preparations he sent Fabius into Spain.

6. There is a river called<sup>1</sup> the Arar which flows through the territory of the Aedui and the Sequani, and empties<sup>2</sup> itself into the Rhine. Its<sup>3</sup> current is so smooth that the eye cannot tell<sup>4</sup> in which<sup>5</sup> direction it flows.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Omit.

<sup>2</sup>The sense will not be injured by omitting "and empties itself."

<sup>3</sup>No need for a new sentence. Continue the previous sentence thus: "With extraordinary smoothness (*incredibili lenitate*), so that (*ita ut*)," etc. Latin, as a rule, prefers one continuous sentence, rather than a number of short sentences.

<sup>4</sup>Translate the meaning thus: "It is not possible to be judged," etc.

<sup>5</sup>Use *uter* (which of two). The river must be flowing in one of two directions. <sup>6</sup>Remember the Mood here.

## LESSON XXVII.

### THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

1. Examine the following conditional sentences:

(a) If he comes (to-morrow), he will be put to death (to-morrow).

(b) If he should come (to-morrow), he would be put to death (to-morrow).

(c) If he were present (now), he would be put to death (now).

(d) If he had been present (yesterday), he would have been put to death (yesterday).

In (a) both clauses are future in meaning, therefore

translate both clauses by the Future Indicative in Latin: thus, *Si veniet, interficietur.*

In (b) both clauses are again future in meaning, but the future is not so vividly expressed. Translate into Latin by the Present Subjunctive. *Si veniat, interficiatur.*

N. B.—We have already had the Present Subjunctive translating futurity after verbs of fearing and in clauses of purpose with *ut*. See Lessons III. and VI.

In (c) we are expressing something which is contrary to fact in present time. Translate by Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

If he were present (but he is not), he would be put to death. *Si adesset, interficeretur.*

In (d) we are expressing something which is contrary to fact in past time. Translate by the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

If he had been present (but he was not), he would have been put to death. *Si adfuisset, interfectus esset.*

2. If both clauses of the conditional sentence are neither future as in (a) and (b), nor contrary to fact as in (c) and (d), translate the English into Latin literally.

Examine the following conditional sentences, and observe that none of them can be referred to (a), (b), (c), or (d).

(e) *Si tot exempla virtutis eum non movent, nihil umquam movebit.* If so many examples of virtue do not influence him, nothing will ever influence him.

Observe that only one of the clauses is future, and that the Latin is literal.

(f) If he comes he ought to be put to death. *Si veniet, interfici debet.*

Again the translation is literal, when it is observed that "comes" means "shall come."

### Translate into English:

1. Si hostes se dedant, Caesar oppidum conservet.  
 2. Si hostes se dedidissent, Caesar oppidum conservavisset. 3. Si Caesar adesset, hostes non tam fortes essent. 4. Si oppidani arma tradidissent, non interfecti essent. 5. In omni Gallia hominum genera sunt duo; alterum Druidum, alterum equitum. Illi<sup>1</sup> rebus<sup>2</sup> divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos<sup>3</sup> magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrat, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et, si<sup>4</sup> quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt.

<sup>1</sup>*illi* refers to the more remote, in this case the Druids.

<sup>2</sup>Dative plural of *res*. Compounds of *sum* govern the Dative.

<sup>3</sup>Notice all the connecting words in the passage: *illi, eos, nam*.

<sup>4</sup>To which class of conditional sentences does this belong?

### Translate into Latin:

1. If Caesar had permitted him, Dumnorix would have remained in Gaul. 2. If Caesar should cross the Rhine, the Germans would take to flight. 3. If Caesar had crossed the Rhine, the Germans would have taken to flight. 4. If Caesar were present, the enemy would not await our attack. 5. If Caesar had been present in Gaul, the Germans would not have crossed the Rhine. 6. If Caesar has been created consul, I do not think that Crassus will remain in the city. 7. If the townsmen take up arms, they ought all to be put to death. 8. If Lycurgus should rise from the grave,<sup>1</sup> he would say this. 9. If Lycurgus were living he would say this. 10. The battle, had the Romans lost it, would have occasioned the annihilation of the Roman army.

<sup>1</sup>*existere ab inferis*. Observe that a condition which is future must never be regarded as contrary to fact. What is future must be regarded as possible, no matter how unlikely it is.

## LESSON XXVIII.

## INDIRECT NARRATION.

*(Oratio Obliqua.)*

1. It has already been said that the Accusative and Infinitive construction is used after verbs of speaking: thus,

The Germans replied that they had come unwillingly. *Germani responderunt se invitos venisse.*

This is called indirect narration. In direct narration the exact words of the speaker are quoted.

"We have come unwillingly," replied the Germans, is direct narration. Before translating into Latin we must turn this into,

The Germans replied that they had come unwillingly, always using the Accusative and Infinitive construction to translate the noun clause introduced by the conjunction "that."

2. It has also been said that if a relative clause depends on the Accusative and Infinitive construction it will have its verb in the Subjunctive: thus,

*Dumnorix affirmavit Caesarem legatos, qui essent in castris, necaturum.* Dumnorix asserted that Caesar would kill the ambassadors who were in the camp.

3. (a) Besides the relative clause, all other clauses which are subordinate to the clause in the Accusative and Infinitive construction will have their verb in the Subjunctive.

Dumnorix replied that he would not cross over to Britain because he feared the sea. *Dumnorix respondit se non in Britanniam transiturum quod mare timeret.*

(b) Caesar said that Dumnorix would pay the penalty if he came. *Caesar dixit Dumnorigem, si veniret, poenam daturum.*

N. B.—The only Moods regularly used in indirect narration are the Infinitive and the Subjunctive.



### Translate into English:

1. Barbaris Caesar ita respondit: *se*,<sup>1</sup> magis consuetudine sua, quam merito eorum, oppidum conservaturum, si priusquam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis.<sup>2</sup> Se id,<sup>3</sup> quod in Nervii fecisset facturum, finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam amicis populi Romani injuriam inferrent.

<sup>1</sup>Give the English both in the direct form and in the indirect. Begin the direct form thus: "In accordance with my usual clemency, rather than because of any merit of yours, I will spare your town, if, before the battering-ram shall have touched the wall, you (shall) have surrendered," etc., etc.

<sup>2</sup>An Ablative Absolute is not affected in any way by indirect narration.

<sup>3</sup>Direct = "I shall do that which I have done in the case of the Nervii and shall order your neighbours," etc., etc.

### Translate into Latin:

1. Dumnorix replied that if Caesar permitted him he would come to him. 2. Caesar learnt from the Ubii that the Suebi, after they had heard that a bridge was being built, had called a council,<sup>1</sup> and had dispatched messengers in all directions, to order all who were able to bear arms to assemble in one place. 3. When Caesar was in Italy he received news<sup>2</sup> to the effect<sup>3</sup> that all the Belgae were forming a league against the Roman people and were giving hostages to one another<sup>4</sup> because they feared that, as all Gaul was brought to subjection,<sup>5</sup> the Roman army would be led against them.

<sup>1</sup>Abl. Abs. Latin prefers subordinate clauses to co-ordinate clauses. <sup>2</sup>Use the impersonal construction.

<sup>3</sup>Omit "to the effect." <sup>4</sup>*inter se*.

<sup>5</sup>Abl. Abs. would be a neat construction here.

## LESSON XXIX.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

1. Two Moods only, as a rule, are found in the indirect narration, the Infinitive and the Subjunctive. All those sentences which were principal statements in the direct narration have their verbs in the Infinitive Mood, while questions, exhortations, commands, and subordinate clauses of all kinds have their verbs in the Subjunctive. Rhetorical questions (being questions in form only, and statements in reality) have the Infinitive in indirect narration, unless the question of the direct narration were Second Person, in which case the verb is in the Subjunctive. Of course, any question, no matter what the person was in the direct narration, will have the Subjunctive in indirect narration if it depends directly upon a verb of asking, because in that case it is an ordinary dependent question. See Lesson XVIII.

Translate into English:

1. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse<sup>1</sup> consuetudinem populi Romani accipere ab hoste armato conditionem; si ab armis discedere velint,<sup>2</sup> se adiutore utantur,<sup>3</sup> legatosque ad Caesarem mittant;<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Principal statement, therefore Infinitive Mood.

<sup>2</sup>Subordinate clause, therefore Subjunctive Mood.

<sup>3</sup>Command, therefore Subjunctive Mood. The direct narration would be: "If you wish to lay down your arms, make use of me as your advocate and send ambassadors to Caesar."

*sperare*<sup>4</sup> pro ejus justitia, quae petierint,<sup>5</sup> imperaturos.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>4</sup>Another principal statement, therefore Infinitive Mood, the Accusative (*se*) which goes with it being understood.

<sup>5</sup>Subordinate clause, therefore Subjunctive.

<sup>6</sup>Supply *esse*, making the Future Infinitive. The construction is then the Accusative and Infinitive, the Accusative *eos* (they) not being expressed. This Accusative and Infinitive depends on the verb *sperare*. "Cicero answered that he hoped that they would obtain what they asked." It is possible to have any number of sentences in the Accusative and Infinitive construction, provided that each clause has a verb of speaking followed by a statement. Thus, "The messenger said that Cicero said that he hoped that they," etc., etc.

Translate into Latin (indirect narration):

1. Cicero gave the following answer to the barbarians: It is not the custom<sup>1</sup> of the Roman people to make terms with an enemy in arms: lay down your arms<sup>2</sup> and send ambassadors to Caesar. If you do this at once,<sup>3</sup> I know that Caesar will pardon you.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Before attempting to translate, imagine "he said" to be placed before every sentence thus:

He said that it was not the custom, etc.

He said that they were to lay down their arms, etc.

He said that, if they did this, he knew that, etc.

Observe the change that takes place in the Tenses.

<sup>2</sup>The Tenses in indirect narration would naturally be Past Tenses, but, just as in English, the Historical Present is often used instead for vividness.

<sup>3</sup>Begin as usual with the word which will best show the connection.

<sup>4</sup>(He said) that "he knew that Caesar would pardon them." "That he knew" is the statement and therefore is Accusative and Infinitive, but the verb "know" is itself a verb which takes Accusative and Infinitive after it; therefore the clause beginning "that Caesar," etc., will also be in the Accusative and Infinitive construction. See last note of previous exercise.

## LESSON XXX.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

1. The Tense of the Infinitive Mood in indirect narration is the Tense which the speaker himself used. In other words, it is the Tense used in the direct narration. In the sentence, Cicero said that it was not the custom of the Roman people, etc. Cicero's own words were, "It is not the custom," etc., therefore the verb "was" must be expressed by the Present Tense.

2. To get the proper Tense for the Subjunctive Mood in indirect narration, use the Tense, not of the direct narration, but the Tense as it is in the indirect form: thus,

*Titurius dixit: Quod Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem.* Titurius said that because all Gaul was conspiring with the Germans, their only safety was in dispatch.

Here the Imperfect *consentiret* is the natural tense for "was conspiring." The direct narration would be: Titurius said: "Because all Gaul is conspiring with the Germans our only safety is in dispatch." Now while the subordinate clause, "because all Gaul is conspiring," is to have its verb in the Past Tense (Impf.) of the Subjunctive Mood, the main statement, "our only safety is in dispatch" is to have its verb in the Present Infinitive according to the first rule of this lesson.

Translate into English:

1. Titurius dixit: suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius,<sup>1</sup> nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros: si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in ce-

<sup>1</sup>Comparative degree of *durus*.



leritate positam salutem. Cottae<sup>2</sup> quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere<sup>3</sup> exitum?

<sup>2</sup>The literal translation of this in the direct narration would be: "What result has the plan of Cotta and of those who differ from me?" Notice that the speaker himself says "has" (Present Tense) and remember that in getting the Tense of the Infinitive, the same Tense as the speaker himself used is to be retained in the indirect narration.

<sup>3</sup>Infinitive, because it is a question in the Third Person, if turned into direct narration. See Exercise XXXIX

Translate into Latin:

1. Titurius spoke thus: My plan is the safest. Fortify<sup>1</sup> the camp with a rampart and a ditch and wait for the reinforcements which Caesar is sending to us. The Gauls will not attack us to-day, because the Germans have not yet arrived.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The Imperfect Subjunctive is the usual Past Tense for the Subjunctive in the indirect narration. The Present may always be used for vividness, as in Exercise XXIX., but do not make a practice of using it.

<sup>2</sup>In order to get the right tense in the subordinate clause put the sentence indirectly thus: "(He said) that the Gauls would not attack them on that day, because the Germans had not yet arrived."

## LESSON XXXI.

### INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

#### Pronouns and Adverbs.

1. In indirect narration all pronouns are Third Person, and adverbs and adverbial phrases are changed in the manner indicated in the following exercise.

Translate into English:

1. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis cen-

turionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: Primum<sup>1</sup>, quod aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur,<sup>2</sup> sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent.<sup>3</sup> Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse.<sup>3</sup> Cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret?<sup>4</sup> Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur?<sup>5</sup> Aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent?<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>The indirect narration begins here and continues to the end of the extract. The verb of speaking is often omitted. Understand "he said that he blamed them" because, etc. In what kind of clause do you expect to find the Subjunctive?

<sup>2</sup>Give the reason for the Subjunctive. The direct narration would be,

(I blame you) because you think, etc.

The indirect =

(He said that he blamed them) because they thought, etc.

Notice the change from 2nd to 3rd Person.

<sup>3</sup>Always imagine "he said" before each new sentence: "(He said) that Ariovistus, when he (Caesar) was consul, had eagerly sought the friendship of the Roman people." The direct narration would be: "Ariovistus, when I was consul, eagerly sought the friendship of the Roman people." Notice the change from the 1st Person of the direct to the 3rd of the indirect narration.

<sup>4</sup>Although this question is Third Person in the direct narration, observe that it is here Subjunctive, not Infinitive, as might be expected. The reason is that this question had the Subjunctive in the direct narration. The question originally was: "Why should anybody suppose." not "Does anybody suppose?" Such questions are called deliberative questions, and they take the Subjunctive whether they are in direct or indirect narration.

<sup>5</sup>Why have these questions the Subjunctive?

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar gave the following answer to the ambassadors: "I do not promise<sup>1</sup> to wait for the hostages, which you have promised<sup>2</sup> to send to me here. To-

<sup>1</sup>(He said) that he did not promise, etc.

<sup>2</sup>Remember your construction after "promise," which is a verb of speaking—promised that they would send to him there.

tomorrow<sup>3</sup> I shall march into your territory and pitch my camp in the vicinity of your town. Return,<sup>4</sup> therefore, at once to your people and tell them what I say."

<sup>3</sup>(He said) that he would march into their territory on the next day, etc.

<sup>4</sup>(He said) that they were to return, etc. Remember that "return" is a command, not a statement.

## LESSON XXXII.

### INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

1. It has been said in the previous exercise that pronouns in indirect narration are in the Third Person. One person is distinguished from another by using the reflexive pronoun *sui* and the reflexive adjective *suus* to refer to the person who is represented as speaking in the narrative. Other persons are represented by one of the demonstratives *is*, *ille*, or *hic*. If no ambiguity is possible, *sui* and *suus* may be used (are used by Caesar) to refer to the subject of their own clause. If ambiguity would arise from the use of *sui*, substitute the other reflexive *ipse*. N. B.—As a means of avoiding ambiguity a proper name is also used instead of any of the pronouns mentioned above.

Translate into English:

Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si<sup>1</sup> quid ipsi<sup>2</sup> a Caesare opus esset, sese<sup>2</sup> ad eum<sup>2</sup> venturum fuisse: si quid ille<sup>2</sup> se velit, illum<sup>2</sup> ad se<sup>2</sup> venire oportere.

<sup>1</sup>After translating literally turn the passage into the direct form and observe all the changes in Persons, Tenses and Moods. Begin thus: "If there was anything necessary to me from you, Caesar (or if I wanted anything from you, Caesar), I would have come to you: if you wish anything from me it behoves you to come to me."

<sup>2</sup>Observe that all the reflexives refer to the main speaker, Ariovistus, while the demonstratives, *is* and *ille* refer to Caesar.

Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar<sup>3</sup> possideret, neque exercitum sine magno com meatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi<sup>2</sup> autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari<sup>3</sup> aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

<sup>2</sup>See footnote on preceding page.

<sup>3</sup>The proper name introduced occasionally instead of the pronoun.

Translate into Latin:

1. Ariovistus<sup>1</sup> answered Caesar thus: "If I<sup>2</sup> do not dictate to you what you should do, it is not right that you<sup>3</sup> should dictate to me.<sup>4</sup> The Aedui are subject to me, since they have tried the fortune of war and have been defeated. You are doing me a great injury, because by your<sup>5</sup> arrival you are reducing my revenues."

<sup>1</sup>Rewrite the whole passage in indirect narration in English before attempting to translate. Begin thus: "Ariovistus answered that if he did not dictate to him what he should do, it was not right," etc.

<sup>2</sup>Use *ip-e* here because *sui* has no nominative.

<sup>3</sup>It would be quite right to put the proper name here as a means of keeping the persons distinct.

<sup>4</sup>*sibi*.

<sup>5</sup>Do not be afraid to say *suo adventu* here because, although the reflexive properly refers to Ariovistus, there is no question of anybody's arrival but Caesar's. This is just the case where the reflexive may be used to refer to the subject of its own clause in indirect narration.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

#### Conditional Sentences.

1. The "*si* clause" of a conditional sentence is called the protasis, and the main clause is called the apodosis. In indirect narration the apodosis, being a main statement, will always have the Infinitive Mood,



and the protasis, being a subordinate clause, will always have the Subjunctive Mood.

2. The Tense of the Infinitive is determined, as has already been said, by using the Tense which the speaker himself used, but the following points must be observed:

(a) There is only one Future Infinitive, namely the participle in *-rū's + esse* (or *fuisse*), and therefore this Infinitive has to stand for both the regular Future and the less vivid Future of the direct narration.

(b) In a contrary-to-fact clause (present or past) the Infinitive is the Participle in *-rus + fuisse*.

3. The following changes take place in the Tense and Mood of the protasis:

(a) The Mood is always Subjunctive.

(b) A good working rule for getting the Tense, not only for the protasis of a conditional clause but for all subordinate clauses in indirect narration, is to put the Tense of the direct narration one point back into the past. Thus:

A Present Indicative would become Imperfect Subjunctive.

A Perfect Indicative would become Pluperfect Subjunctive.

A Future Indicative would become Imperfect Subjunctive (because the Present Subjunctive ordinarily expresses futurity). Therefore, a Future-perfect Indicative would become Pluperfect Subjunctive.

N. B.—If the writer wishes to use vivid narration he will bring the Tenses back one point nearer the present, so that you will find the Present used for the Imperfect, and the Perfect used for the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Translate into English:

1. Barbaris Caesar ita respondit: Se<sup>1</sup> magis consuetudine sua,<sup>1</sup> quam merito eorum,<sup>1</sup> civitatem con-

<sup>1</sup>The reflexive refers to Caesar and *eorum* to the barbarians.

servaturum, si, priusquam murum aries attigisset,<sup>2</sup> se<sup>3</sup> dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis. Se<sup>4</sup> id, quod in Nervii fecisset,<sup>5</sup> facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam deditionis<sup>6</sup> populi Romani injuriam inferrent.

<sup>2</sup>The Pluperfect Subjunctive here stands for the Future Perf. Indic. of the direct: "I shall spare your city, if you shall have surrendered before the battering-ram shall have touched the wall."

<sup>3</sup>To whom does this reflexive refer?

<sup>4</sup>The direct narration would be: "I shall do that which I did in the case of the Nervii," etc.

<sup>5</sup>Observe that the Tense "I did" goes back one point in the indirect: "(He said) that he would do that which he *had done* (Plpf.)." Observe also that "I shall do," the Tense of the main statement, remains in the Future Tense.

<sup>6</sup>What case and why? See Exercise XXI.

Translate into Latin:

To these demands<sup>1</sup> Caesar gave the following answer: "I<sup>2</sup> shall not attack your city to-day if you send me the hostages which I have demanded. If I had done what I did in the case of your neighbours, I<sup>3</sup> should have taken your city by storm as soon as I arrived.<sup>4</sup> Send, therefore, the hostages at once, and do not<sup>5</sup> expose your women and children to the dangers of a siege.

<sup>1</sup>The Neuter Gender of the demonstrative will express this, when it is known that the barbarians had been making certain demands in the previous sentence. Use *ad* for "to."

<sup>2</sup>Turn into the indirect before translating. (He said) that he would not attack their city on that day, if they sent him the hostages which he had demanded.

<sup>3</sup>In the main clause of the contrary-to-fact conditional sentence, remember that the Infinitive is the Participle in *-rus* and *fuisse*.

<sup>4</sup>Remember that the verbs of all subordinate clauses go one point back into the past.

<sup>5</sup>The negative in a command is always *ne*, and the conjunction "and" with *ne* is *neve*, not *et ne*.

## LESSON XXXIV.

## VIRTUAL ORATIO OBLIQUA.

1. Sometimes the form of a sentence is direct, although it is in reality indirect:

(a) *Dumnorix a Caesare petivit ut in Gallia relinqueretur quod mare timeret.* Dumnorix begged Caesar that he should be left in Gaul because (as he said) he was afraid of the sea.

Observe that *quod* (because) usually takes the Indicative Mood, but here the meaning is that Dumnorix said he feared the sea. The verb "feared" is therefore in the Subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in what is really indirect narration.

(b) *Magna proposuit iis, qui occidissent, praemia.* He offered great rewards to those who should kill him.

This is really indirect also, for it is equal to: He said that he would give great rewards to those who should kill him. Observe that the verb "should kill" is in a relative clause in what is really indirect narration, and therefore it is in the Subjunctive Mood. The Tense is Pluperfect because in the direct narration it would be Future-perfect: thus,

I shall give great rewards to those who kill (shall have killed) him.

N. B.—If the more vivid construction is desired, bring the Tenses one point nearer the present: thus,

*Magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia.*

Here the ordinary Past Tense of the Indicative (Perfect) is brought to the Present, while the Pluperfect Subjunctive is brought to the Perfect.

Translate into English:

1. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit ut in Gallia relinqueretur, quod religionibus impediretur.<sup>1</sup> Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, principes Galliae sevocare hortarique coepit uti in continenti remanerent: id<sup>2</sup> esse consilium Caesaris ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent,<sup>3</sup> communi consilio administrarent.

<sup>1</sup>Virtual indirect narration. "Because (as he said) he was deterred by religious scruples."

<sup>2</sup>The regular indirect narration begins here. The verb of speaking is often omitted—(saying) that this was Caesar's plan, namely that (*ut*), etc.

<sup>3</sup>What would be the English of this verb in *Oratio Recta*?

Translate into Latin:

These two great nations renewed the war with the greatest bitterness, the Romans<sup>1</sup> being indignant because a conquered nation<sup>2</sup> had attacked them without provocation,<sup>3</sup> and the Carthaginians<sup>4</sup> because their conquerors had ruled<sup>5</sup> over them in too insolent a manner. The latter felt, too, that, if their great Hamilcar<sup>6</sup> had not been killed at the beginning of the first Punic war, they would have swept the Roman race from the face of the earth.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Abl. Abs.      <sup>2</sup>*victi* = the conquered.      <sup>3</sup>*ultro*.

<sup>4</sup>Same construction as "the Romans" above

<sup>5</sup>"Had ruled," and "had attacked" above both state what each nation said or thought, therefore these clauses are virtually in indirect narration.

<sup>6</sup>Say, "Hamilcar, a very great general"

<sup>7</sup>Say, "They would have reduced the race of the Romans almost to extermination (*prope ad internicionem gentem Romanorum redigere*).



## LESSON XXXV.

## THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

1. The Present Indicative is used as in English, but it is also used:

(a) To express an action which has been begun in the past and is still going on in the present, as,  
*Jamdiu urbs obsidetur.* The city has now been besieged for a long time.

(b) With *dum* (while) instead of a Past Tense in such sentences as:

*Dum Romani ea parant, Saguntum captum est.*  
 Whilst the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was taken.

N. B.—The teacher may, if he thinks fit, make comparisons with such Present Tenses as, Caesar is coming, Caesar comes, Men desire liberty, The sun rises every day, etc.

2. The Imperfect Indicative is a past tense, and is used:

(a) To describe any action in past time which is regarded as not completed or not perfect. Thus, *discebat* = he was learning, he used to learn, he began to learn. In short, *discebat* has any meaning at all which describes the action of learning as past but not completed.

(b) To describe an action which had been begun in the past and was still going on at a certain point in the past.

*Jamdiu urbs obsidebatur.* The city had now been besieged for a long time.

Observe that this is but the past of 1 (a), with which compare.

3. The Perfect Indicative has two meanings:

(a) *Explorator rem nuntiavit* means either, The scout has announced the matter (present perfect), or, The scout announced the matter (historic perfect). The latter meaning is the ordinary meaning in narrating past events.

(b) The Perfect Indicative is also used in a subordinate clause with the Present Indicative in the main clause to describe an action which is happening an indefinite number of times.

*Ubi (or cum) suos laborantes vidit, auxilia submittit.* Whenever he sees his men in difficulties, he sends reinforcements.

4. The Pluperfect Indicative is used as in English, but it is also used idiomatically in a subordinate clause, with the Imperfect Indicative in the main clause, to describe an action which happened an indefinite number of times.

*Ubi (or cum) suos laborantes viderat, auxilia submittebat.* As often as he saw his men in difficulties, he sent reinforcements.

N. B.—This is simply the past of 3 (b).

5. The Future Indicative is used as in English, and it must always be used in those subordinate clauses where the English uses the present with a future meaning.

*Si Dumnorix veniet, interficietur.* If Dumnorix comes (shall come), he will be killed.

6. The Future-perfect Indicative describes an action which is not only future but also completed before another action begins. English is generally satisfied with the Present.

*Dumnorix cum pervenerit, interficietur.* When Dumnorix arrives (shall have arrived), he will be killed.

The action of arriving is future, but it is also to be completed before the act of killing is performed.

The Future and Future-perfect tenses of the four Conjugations are:

	<i>Future</i>	<i>Future-perfect</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>	{ necabit necabunt	necaverit necaverint
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	{ jubebit jubebunt	jusserit jusserint
<i>3rd Conj.</i>	{ mittet mittent	miserit miserint
<i>4th Conj.</i>	{ muniet munient	muniverit muniverint

Table of Verb of 1st Conjugation, Active and Passive.

neco      necare      necavi      necatum

#### ACTIVE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necat	<i>Pf.</i> necavit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> necabat	<i>Plpf.</i> necaverat	
	{ <i>Fut.</i> necabit	<i>Ftperf.</i> necaverit	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necet	<i>Pf.</i> necaverit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> necaret	<i>Plpf.</i> necavisset	<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	necare	<i>Pf.</i> necavisse	necaturus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	necans	<i>Pf.</i> (wanting)	necaturus
<i>Gerund.</i>	necandi		

#### PASSIVE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necatur	<i>Pf.</i> necatus est
	{ <i>Impf.</i> necabatur	<i>Plpf.</i> necatus erat
	{ <i>Fut.</i> necabitur	<i>Ftperf.</i> necatus erit
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necetur	<i>Pf.</i> necatus sit
	{ <i>Impf.</i> necaretur	<i>Plpf.</i> necatus esset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	necari	<i>Pf.</i> necatus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i> necatus
<i>Gerundive</i>	necandus	

Translate into English;

1. Dum haec geruntur, Caesar prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui celeritate adventus nostri perterriti magnopere perturbabantur, castrane<sup>1</sup> defend-

<sup>1</sup>ne=whether, and is always joined to the first word of the clause.

ere an<sup>2</sup> fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu<sup>3</sup> et concursu<sup>3</sup> significaretur milites nostri pristini diei<sup>4</sup> perfidia incitati in castra irruerunt. Quo loco qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaue proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos<sup>5</sup> consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit.

<sup>2</sup>an = or, in questions whether dependent or direct.

<sup>3</sup>Ablative Case of 4th Declension nouns *fremitus* and *concursum*.

<sup>4</sup>*dies*, Genitive of 5th Declension noun *dies*.

<sup>5</sup>Observe that the relative has been used four times in this short passage to mark the connection between the sentences.

### Translate into Latin:

1. They take away the sun from the world<sup>1</sup> who take away friendship from life. 2. Cato used to declare<sup>2</sup> that Carthage must be destroyed. 3. Caesar will save the town if the inhabitants surrender before the battering-ram touches the wall. 4. Caesar said that he would save the town if the inhabitants surrendered before the battering-ram touched the wall. 5. Whenever this general took a city he used to kill the women and<sup>3</sup> children. 6. When Caesar took this city, he killed the women and<sup>4</sup> children. 7. While Caesar was delaying in these parts for the purpose of procuring<sup>5</sup> ships, ambassadors came to him from the Morini. 8. Galba has been king for ten years. 9. Galba had been king of that country for ten years.

<sup>1</sup>*solē e mundo tollere*. The world here = the universe.

<sup>2</sup>This was a common saying with Cato.

<sup>3</sup>Use *ac* or *atque*. This will give more force to the cruelty of the act—"not only the women, but even the children."

<sup>4</sup>Use *que*. Here the act may have been cruel, but it was no doubt necessary. Better not emphasize the cruelty. *que* brings two nouns closely together under one head. *mulieres liberique* = the non-combatants.

<sup>5</sup>*parare*.



## LESSON XXXVI.

## SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

1. (a) When the principal verb refers to present or future time, the Dependent Subjunctive should be in the Present or Perfect Tense.

This is called Primary Sequence.

(b) When the principal verb refers to past time, the Dependent Subjunctive should be in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense.

This is called Historic Sequence.

## Examples of Primary Sequence

2. Principal verb followed by Present or Perfect Tense.

(a) *Rogo, rogabo, rogavero* (I ask, shall ask, shall have asked), *quid scribat* (what he writes, is writing).

(b) *Rogo, rogabo, rogavero* (I ask, shall ask, shall have asked), *quid scripserit* (what he has written, wrote, was writing).

(c) *Rogo, rogabo, rogavero* (I ask, shall ask, shall have asked), *quid scripturus sit* (what he will write, is about to write).

## Examples of Historic Sequence

3. Principal verb followed by Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense.

(a) *Rogabam, rogavi, rogaveram* (I was asking, asked, had asked), *quid scriberet* (what he was writing, wrote).

(b) *Rogabam, rogavi, rogaveram* (I was asking, asked, had asked), *quid scripsisset* (what he had written).

(c) *Rogabam, rogavi, rogaveram* (I was asking, asked, had asked), *quid scripturus esset* (what he would write, was about to write).

4. The Tense "I have asked" is followed by either Primary or Historic Sequence. If the act is regarded as completed in past time, the Historic Sequence is natural, but if the act be regarded as just completed in the present, the Primary Sequence may be used.

5. Note that in 2 (c) *sit* is Present Tense, and in 3 (c) *esset* is Imperfect Tense, according to the rule laid down in 1, the Future Participle, *scripturus*, being used to bring out the future meaning.

6. After *ut* in clauses of result the rule for sequence of Tenses does not hold good in the following cases:

(a) When the principal verb refers to past time and the subordinate verb to present time: as,

*Heri ita perterritus est ut hodie domi maneat.* He got such a fright yesterday that he is staying at home to-day.

(b) When the principal verb refers to past time and the subordinate verb describes an act which has begun in the past and has continued to the present (English Present-Perfect or Perfect with "have").

*Tam multa mentitus est ut nemo ei tum crederet nec quisquam postea unquam crediderit.* He told so many lies that nobody believed him at the time and nobody has ever put faith in him since.

Here *crederet* is the regular sequence, but in the last clause the sense requires *crediderit* in the Perfect Tense regardless of the regular sequence.

(c) The Perfect Subjunctive is also used after a past tense instead of the Imperfect when the writer wishes to emphasize an historical fact and one not closely dependent on the main verb: thus,

*Hostes acriter cum equitatu nostro conflixerunt tamen ut nostri eos in silvas collesque compulerint.* The enemy fought fiercely with our cavalry, nevertheless the result was that our men drove them into the woods and hills.

Here the result depends not so much on the action of the enemy, but rather on the usual superiority of the Roman soldier.

7. After *ut* (neg. *ne*) in clauses of purpose, only two tenses are admissible, the Present Subjunctive in Primary Sequence, and the Imperfect Subjunctive in Historic Sequence.

### Table of 2nd Conjugation, Active and Passive

#### ACTIVE

	jubeo	jubere	jussi	jussum
<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> jubet	<i>Pf.</i> jussit	
		<i>Impf.</i> jubebat	<i>Plpf.</i> jusserat	
		<i>Fut.</i> jubebit	<i>Ftlf.</i> jusserit	
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> jubeat	<i>Pf.</i> jusserit	
		<i>Impf.</i> juberet	<i>Plpf.</i> jussisset	
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		jubere	<i>Pf.</i> jussisse	
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		jubens	<i>Pf.</i> (wanting)	
<i>Gerund.</i>		jubendi		

#### PASSIVE

<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> jubetur	<i>Pf.</i> jussus est
		<i>Impf.</i> jubebatur	<i>Plpf.</i> jussus erat
		<i>Fut.</i> jubebitur	<i>Ftlf.</i> jussus erit
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i> jubeatur	<i>Pf.</i> jussus sit
		<i>Impf.</i> juberetur	<i>Plpf.</i> jussus esset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		juberi	<i>Pf.</i> jussus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i> jussus
<i>Gerundive</i>		jubendus, -a, -um	

Translate into English:

1. Dumnorix petit ut in Gallia relinquatur.
2. Dumnorix petebat ut in Gallia relinqueretur.
3. Dumnorix petiit ut in Gallia relinquatur.
4. Dumnorix petiit ut in Gallia relinqueretur.
5. Dumnorix petet ut in Gallia relinquatur.
6. Dumnorix petierat ut in Gallia relinqueretur.
7. Caesar quaerit quid Dumnorix faciat.
8. Caesar quaerit quid Dumnorix fecerit.
9. Caesar quaerit quid Dumnorix facturus sit.
10. Caesar quaerebat quid Dumnorix faceret.
11. Caesar quaerebat quid Dumnorix

fecisset. 12. Caesar quaerebat quid Dumnorix facturus esset. 13. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt<sup>1</sup> pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat.

<sup>1</sup>Historical Present.

### Translate into Latin:

1. Baculus was exhausted<sup>1</sup> with many severe<sup>2</sup> wounds, so that he was not able to keep his feet<sup>3</sup> any longer. 2. Caesar gave the order to open<sup>4</sup> the ranks so that they might be able to use their swords. 3. Labienus asked when Caesar intended to come.<sup>5</sup> 4. Labienus was left on the continent to find out what was going on in Gaul. 5. Who does not know in what honour music used to be held<sup>6</sup> among the Greeks? 6. On that occasion Catiline showed how great the power of conscience is.<sup>7</sup> 7. The enemy fought fiercely, nevertheless the result was that<sup>8</sup> our men had the best of it in all parts of the field.<sup>9</sup> 8. (Rewrite sentence 13 of the Latin exercise above without using historic present.)

<sup>1</sup>*confectus*.      <sup>2</sup>Many and severe (*gravis*).

<sup>3</sup>*se sustinere*, to hold himself up.

<sup>4</sup>*laxare*. It is not necessary to say to whom Caesar gave the order. You may take it for granted that it was to his officers.

<sup>5</sup>Express by the Future Participle of *venio* and the proper Tense and Mood of the verb *esse*.

<sup>6</sup>This sounds like the Imperfect, and it would be Imperfect if it were Indicative, but being Subjunctive of a dependent question you must use the Perfect. Why? See consecution of Tenses. The statement in Latin would be: *Magno in honore apud Graecos musica erat* (Imperf.).

<sup>7</sup>Do not use the Present here. Why not? The power of conscience = *conscientiae vis*.

<sup>8</sup>*tamen ut* is sufficient for "nevertheless the result was that." Had the best of it = were superior.

<sup>9</sup>Omit "of the field."



## LESSON XXXVII.

## THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

## 1. The Tenses of the Infinitive are:

	Active	Passive
(a) The Present	oppugnare	oppugnari
(b) The Perfect	oppugnnavisse	oppugnatus esse
(c) The Future	oppugnaturus esse	oppugnatum iri

N. B.—*Oppugnatum* is the Supine and is indeclinable.

*Iri* is the Present Infinitive Passive of *ire* (to go).

Besides the above, *oppugnaturum fuisse* is used in *Oratio Obliqua* in the apodosis of the contrary-to-fact construction. See Lesson XXXIII. for all Tenses of Infinitive in the Accusative and Infinitive construction.

2. (a) Some verbs have no Future Infinitive. With such verbs use *fore* or *futurum esse* and *ut* + the Subjunctive: as,

*Dicit fore ut puer Latine loqui discat.* He says that it will be (it will come to pass) that the boy may learn to speak Latin. (*Latine* is an adverb.)

If *dicit* be changed to *dixit*, *discat* will, of course, become *disceret*, thus:

*Dixit futurum esse ut puer Latine loqui disceret.* He said that it would be that the boy would learn to speak Latin.

(b) The *fore ut* construction is more usual when the voice is Passive.

“*Dixit fore ut urbs oppugnaretur*” is more usual than “*Dixit urbem oppugnatum iri.*” He said that the city would be attacked.

3. The following verbs take the Present Infinitive where the English has the Perfect:

(a) *Ire debet*, *he ought to go*

*Ire debuit*, *he ought to have gone*

- (b) Eum ire oportet (lit., *it behoves him to go*),  
*he ought to go*  
 Eum ire oportuit, *he ought to have gone*
- (c) Ire potest, *he can go*  
 Ire potuit, *he could have gone* (or, *he was able to go*)
- (d) Ei ire licet, *he may go* (lit., *it is permitted to him to go*)  
 Ei ire licuit, *he might have gone* (*it was permitted to him to go*)

The past time in Latin is brought out by the main verb, not by the dependent Infinitive. Wherever the English is capable of bringing out the past meaning in the main verb, it takes the same construction as the Latin and keeps the Infinitive in the Present Tense: thus,

He can go (now).

He was able to go (yesterday).

But if we say "could" for "was able," we must say "he could have gone (yesterday)," because "could" is not necessarily past time in English, so that to bring out the past time it is necessary to put the Perfect Infinitive "have gone." Latin, however, always expresses the past time by the main verb: thus,

*Ire potuit.* He was able to go, or, he could have gone (yesterday.)

4. Write out the table of 3rd and 4th Conjugation Active and Passive, using the verbs, *mitto, mittere, misi, missum* (to send), and *audio, audire, audiui, auditum* (to hear). See Lessons XXIV. and XXV.

Translate into English:

1. Magnam in spem Caesar veniebat fore ut Ariovistus pertinacia desisteret. 2. Cum Caesar in Italia abesset, Sabinus castris exire non debuit. 3. Barbaris Caesar ita respondit: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque

verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint,<sup>1</sup> alie-  
nos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros,  
qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine injuria  
possint; sed licere in Ubiorum finibus considerare:  
hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

<sup>1</sup>Perfect Subjunctive. This is used for vividness instead of the regular Pluperfect. Caesar begins this passage with the regular construction, as is seen by the verb *remanerent*, but he here drops into the vivid construction (the Perfect Subjunctive being as a rule a Primary Tense). The literal translation is: "(He says) that it is not reasonable that those who *have not been able* to defend their own territory should get possession of," etc.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar hopes that Ariovistus will desist from his obstinacy.
2. Brutus should not have engaged such a large number of the enemy in the absence of his commander-in-chief.
3. Dumnorix, fearing lest he should be deserted by all, sent ambassadors to Caesar.
4. If Caesar should come, the city would easily be captured.
5. Caesar said that he would return on the next day, unless he were prevented by the enemy.
6. (After translating sentence 3 of the Latin exercise into English, retranslate into Latin without using the vivid narration.)

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

1. A noun, a pronoun (or an adjective or a participle used as a noun) stands in the Nominative Case if it is the subject of a verb in the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood: as,

*Cum Caesar abesset, Labienus motum timebat.* As Caesar was away, Labienus feared a disturbance.

N. B.—The subject of a verb in the Infinitive Mood is in the Accusative.

*Caesar dixit Labienum motum timere.* Caesar said that Labienus feared a rebellion.

2. The verb *to be*, *to become*, and verbs of being named, being made, being elected, being created, and all equivalent expressions, take the same Case after them as before them, no matter what that Case may be.

- (a) *Caesar fuit magnus imperator.*
- (b) *Dico Caesarem esse magnum imperatorem.*
- (c) *Numa creatus est rex.*
- (d) *Dico Numam creatum esse regem.*
- (e) *Licet omnibus esse bonis.*

### Table of the Fourth Declension.

Motus, <i>a rising</i>		
<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	motus	motus
<i>Gen.</i>	motus	motuum
<i>Dat.</i>	motui (u)	motibus
<i>Acc.</i>	motum	motus
<i>Abl.</i>	motu	motibus

### Translate into English:

1. Caesar exercitui Labienum praefecit. 2. Caesar exposito exercitu ad hostes de tertia vigilia contendit. 3. Germani exercitus nostri adventu perterriti statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. 4. Legatis tribunisque militum quos convocaverat dimissis, Caesar dato signo et sublatiis ancoris circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit. 5. Hi loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus<sup>1</sup> nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, non cunctandum existimavit quin<sup>2</sup> pugna decertaret. 6. Hi

<sup>1</sup>In a series of words or phrases the conjunction is often omitted altogether.

<sup>2</sup>*quin* (a conjunction, "but that") is always used with the Subjunctive Mood. It is used

(a) After a verb of doubting or hesitating with a negative, as here.

(b) After a verb of hindering, with a negative. *Catilina non deterreri potuit quin conjurationem faceret.* Catiline could not be hindered from forming a conspiracy.



constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitumque in unum locum conduci.

Translate into Latin:

1. They were afraid, now that all Gaul had been brought to a state of peace,<sup>1</sup> that our army would be led against themselves. 2. The Aedui asserted that their children ought not to have been carried off<sup>2</sup> into slavery. 3. They said that their towns were being captured almost in sight of our army. 4. Ariovistus had been called a friend by the senate of Rome. 5. Caesar said that Ariovistus had been called a friend by the senate. 6. It is not permitted to Roman soldiers to be cowards. 7. It is unlawful for any man<sup>3</sup> to lead an army against his country.<sup>4</sup> 8. Finding both wind and tide favourable, he weighed anchor and sailed forward<sup>5</sup> ten miles from that place.

<sup>1</sup>Abl. Abs. Use the Participle from *parare*.

<sup>2</sup>*abducere*. <sup>3</sup>Say, "lawful for no one" (*nemo*).

<sup>4</sup>Think of the exact meaning. "Country" means so many things.

<sup>5</sup>Any verb of "going forward" will do, because we know he *is* in a ship.

## LESSON XXXIX.

### THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative Case: as,

*Caesar Gallos vicit.* Caesar conquered the Gauls.

2. A verb which is intransitive may take an Accusative, if the substantive have a kindred meaning with the verb: as,

*Hannibal mirum somnium somniavit.* Hannibal dreamed a wonderful dream.

3. The following impersonal verbs of emotion. *piget*,

*pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret*, take an Accusative of the person who feels the emotion, and a Genitive of the thing which causes the emotion: as,

*Eum sceleris paenitet.* He repents of his crime (lit., It repents him of his crime).

4. (a) Verbs of making, choosing, electing, etc., govern two Accusatives.

*Ciceronem populus Romanus consulem creavit.* The Roman people created Cicero consul.

(b) In the Passive both Accusatives become Nominatives.

*Cicero a populo Romano consul creatus est.* Cicero was created consul by the Roman people.

N. B.—Cicero and consul refer to one and the same person and are therefore in the same case whether the verb is active or passive, but compare with 5.

5. (a) Verbs signifying to ask, teach, and conceal take two Accusatives: as,

*Populus Romanus Ciceronem sententiam rogavit.* The Roman people asked Cicero his opinion.

N. B.—But this construction of *rogo* is only found (a) with Neuters of adjectives, pronouns, etc., e.g., *hoc te rogo*, and (b) with *sententiam*.

(b) In the Passive the person becomes the subject and the thing remains in the Accusative (called the Retained Accusative).

*Cicero sententiam rogatus est.* Cicero was asked his opinion.

N. B.—With *quaero* (I question), *peto*, *postulo* (and sometimes with *posco* and *flagito*), the person from whom you ask the thing is expressed by the preposition from (*ab* or *ex*) with the Ablative: as, *Galli pacem ab Romanis petierunt.* The Gauls begged peace from the Romans.

6. Duration of time and distance in space are expressed by the Accusative without a preposition: as,

(a) *Caesar decem milia passuum processit.* Caesar advanced ten miles.

(b) *Decem annos Graeci Trojam obsederunt.* For ten years the Greeks besieged Troy.

7. The names of towns, small islands and the words *domus* and *rus* stand in the Accusative without a preposition with the idea of "motion to": as,

(a) *Caesar Romam proficiscitur.* Caesar sets out for Rome.

(b) *Nervii domum revertuntur.* The Nervii return home.

N. B.—But if the motion does not continue right up to the place named, the preposition is expressed: as, *Cicero ad Capuam profectus est.* Cicero set out for Capua.

As a matter of fact Cicero was not going to Capua, but to an encampment in front of Capua.

8. Prepositions as a rule govern the Accusative. Exceptions will be given later.

#### Table of 4th Declension

passus, a pace	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> passus	passus
<i>Gen.</i> passus	passuum
<i>Dat.</i> passui (u)	passibus
<i>Acc.</i> passum	passus
<i>Abl.</i> passu	passibus

Most nouns in the 4th Declension end in *us* and are Masculine, but *manus* (a hand, a handful of men, a band) and *domus* (a house) are Feminine. There are a few nouns in *u*, and they are Neuter.

Translate into English:

1. Eum stultitiae pudet.
2. Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente.
3. Tantum

terrorem injecit exercitui<sup>1</sup> Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus.<sup>2</sup> 4. Aristides cognomine Justus appellatus est. 5. Caesare consule, senatus Ariovistum amicum populi Romani appellavit. 6. Cato sententiam rogatus dixit delendam esse Carthaginem. 7. Labienus castra vallo decem pedes<sup>3</sup> alto munivit. 8. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad<sup>4</sup> Genuam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una): pontem, qui erat ad<sup>5</sup> Genuam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt,<sup>6</sup> legatos ad eum mittunt.

<sup>1</sup>Why Dative?

<sup>2</sup>*audéo, audere, ausus sum*, is called a Semi-Deponent verb. It is partly Active and partly Passive in form and the meaning is *to dare*. What is the Conj.? Make out the whole table.

<sup>3</sup>What case?

<sup>4</sup>He goes only to the vicinity of Geneva. Hence the preposition.

<sup>5</sup>*ad*=at, close to. There is no "motion to" in this case.

<sup>6</sup>*certiores facti sunt*. *certus*=certain. *certior* is the Comparative Degree, more certain. The phrase="they were made more certain," a common Latin expression for "they were informed." The active is *certiorem facere*, "to make (any one) more certain."

Translate into Latin:

1. They did not dare to remain, and the majority advised that they should return to their homes. 2. Themistocles informed Xerxes that the bridge which he had made over the Hellespont, would be broken down, and he would be prevented from returning into Asia. 3. Themistocles repented of his folly. 4. When asked his opinion, Themistocles advised the citizens to build a hundred ships. 5. They sent to Delphi to ask what they should do. 6. When Hannibal was in exile in Bithynia, ambassadors from Prusias happened to be at Rome.<sup>1</sup> One evening,<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Say, "It happened that ambassadors were dining at Rome," etc.

<sup>2</sup>The time of day does not matter; say, *atque ibi*, "and there," that is, in Rome at the dinner.



when they were dining with (apud) Flaminius, the consul, Hannibal's name came up<sup>3</sup> in the course of the conversation,<sup>4</sup> and one of the legates remarked that he was at the court (in regno) of Prusias. Next day Flaminius tells this piece of news<sup>5</sup> to the senate. The senators<sup>6</sup> thinking<sup>7</sup> that so long as Hannibal was alive,<sup>8</sup> they would always be exposed to his machinations,<sup>9</sup> sent ambassadors to Bithynia, of whom Flaminius was one,<sup>10</sup> to ask the king not to harbour<sup>11</sup> (a man who was)<sup>12</sup> their worst enemy.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>3</sup>Say simply, "mention of Hannibal having been made."

<sup>4</sup>Continue the same construction with which you began, "and there (it happened that), mention of Hannibal having been made, one of them said," etc. There is, of course, no need to express "it happened that," a second time. Make one continuous sentence from "when Hannibal" to "the court of Prusias."

<sup>5</sup>This piece of news=*id*, and put it first to show connection.

<sup>6</sup>The senators were called *patres conscripti*.

<sup>7</sup>Who thought, etc. Who=*because* they, requires the Subjunctive Mood. <sup>8</sup>Abl. Abs.

<sup>9</sup>Say, "they would never be free from (without, *sine*) treachery (*insidiae*)." <sup>10</sup>Among them Flaminius.

<sup>11</sup>Say, "not to keep (*habere*) with him."

<sup>12</sup>Omit. <sup>13</sup>Superlative of *inimicus*.

## LESSON XL.

### THE GENITIVE CASE.

1. Verbs signifying to remember, remind, forget and pity govern the Genitive: as,

Reminisceretur veteris incommodi populi Romani.  
Let him remember the old disaster to the Roman people.

2. The following adjectives govern the Genitive: *cupidus* (desirous of), *avidus* (greedy of), *ignarus* (ignorant of), *peritus* (skilled in), *imperitus* (unskilled in), *insuetus* (unaccustomed to), *similis* (like to, generally of likeness in character): as,

*Insuetus navigandi mare timebat*. Being unaccustomed to sailing, he was afraid of the sea.

3. By far the most common use of the Genitive is when one substantive is used immediately after another for the purpose of defining it in some way. The two nouns are connected in English by some preposition, such as *of*, *for*, *with*, etc. Examples are:

(a) *Patria Ciceronis*, the native town of Cicero. *Ciceronis* indicates the possessor. *Ciceronis* is therefore called the Possessive Genitive.

(b) *Bellum Germanorum*, the war with the Germans. The Germans are the object of the action of making war. *Germanorum* is therefore called the Objective Genitive.

(c) The Genitive also denotes the whole of which a part is taken. *Magna pars militum*, a great part of the soldiers. *Sapientissimi Graecorum*, the wisest of the Greeks.

N. B.—In phrases like *all of the soldiers*, we must say *omnes milites* (all the soldiers), because no part is taken.

(d) The Genitive is also used with an adjective to describe a substantive in some way: as,

*Vir magnae virtutis*, a man of great valour.

This is called the Descriptive Genitive, or Genitive of Quality.

N. B.—The Descriptive Genitive must be qualified by an adjective. You must never say, *vir virtutis*, for, a man of valour. If a less emphatic expression than *vir magnae virtutis* is desired, say, *vir fortis*, a brave man.

(e) The Genitive is also added to a substantive to define its meaning more exactly: as,

*Arbor abietis*, the fir tree.

N. B.—This Genitive of Definition, as it is called, is very common with Gerunds: as,  
*Ars dicendi*, the art of speaking.

(f) The Genitives *tanti*, *quantum*, *magni*, *parvi*, *plu-*

*ris*, *minoris*, and *nihili* are used to express the price or value at which a thing is estimated: as,

*Quanti docet?* For how much does he teach?

If the thing is actually bought or sold, *tanti*, *quantum*, *pluris*, *minoris*, and *maximi* are still used, but otherwise price or value is to be expressed by the Ablative.

*Quanti frumentum vendit?* At what price is he selling corn?

*Magno frumentum vendit.* He is selling corn at a great price.

*Auro corpus vendit.* He is selling the body for gold.

(So, too, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*.)

(g) The names of towns and small islands of the 1st and 2nd Declensions stand in the Genitive (if Singular) to express the place where: as,

*Romae vivit.* He lives at Rome.

If Plural, or if 3rd Declension, use the Ablative without a preposition.

*Athenis vivit.* He lives at Athens.

*Babylone vivit.* He lives at Babylon.

In the same way are used *domi* (at home), *humi* (on the ground). *Belli* (in war), *militiae* (on military service), are also used in this way, usually when combined with *domi*; if not so combined, *in bello*, *in militia* are used.

*Caesaris virtus et domi et militiae cognita est.* Caesar's excellence was recognized both at home and in the field.

*Hi fratres in bello occiderunt.* These brothers fell in the war.

(h) The verb *sum* with a Genitive expresses mark, duty, custom, characteristic, etc.: as,

*Stulti est in errore perseverare.* It is the mark of a fool to persevere in error.

The Neuter of the adjective may be used to express the same idea: as, *Stultum est*, etc. It is foolish, etc.

If the adjective has only one termination, the Genitive must be used: as, *Sapientis est*, etc. It is the mark of a wise man, etc.



## Table of Domus, a house

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> domus	domus
<i>Gen.</i> domus	domuum
<i>Dat.</i> domui	domibus
<i>Acc.</i> domum	domos
<i>Abl.</i> domo	domibus

N. B.—The Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural of *domus* usually have the terminations of the 2nd Declension. *Domi* (also *domui*) means *at home*.

Translate into English:

1. Sueborum<sup>1</sup> gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi<sup>2</sup> centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui,<sup>3</sup> qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est. 2. Erat una cum<sup>4</sup> ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante dictum est.<sup>5</sup> Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum<sup>6</sup> novarum, cupidum imperii<sup>7</sup>, magni animi,<sup>7</sup> magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Ille<sup>8</sup> omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur; partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret; partim quod religionibus<sup>9</sup> impediretur.

<sup>1</sup>Account for all the Genitives in both extracts.

<sup>2</sup>Would *illi* do instead of *hi*? See note on *ille* in extract 2.

<sup>3</sup>Show how the connection is indicated between each sentence in both extracts. <sup>4</sup>*una cum* = along with.

<sup>5</sup>What is the subject?

<sup>6</sup>*rerum* is Genitive Plural of *res*. *res novae* (new things) is an idiomatic expression for "change of government, or revolution."

<sup>7</sup>Observe that *imperii* and *animi* are in the Genitive for quite different reasons.

<sup>8</sup>*ille* at the beginning of a new sentence indicates a change of subject. The unexpressed subject of the last verb (*cognoverat*) is Caesar. *ille* = Dumnorix. <sup>9</sup>Religious scruples.



Translate into Latin:

1. The Belgae, observing<sup>1</sup> the manner of our army's march during those days,<sup>2</sup> came to the Nervii by night. 2. The Germans had no time<sup>3</sup> for concerting measures or seizing their arms. 3. Any man may err;<sup>4</sup> nobody but a fool will persist in error. 4. Nothing is so<sup>5</sup> characteristic of a narrow mind as to love riches. 5. With<sup>6</sup> the light armed of the infantry and cavalry they joined battle with<sup>6</sup> the enemy. 6. There is a fountain of sweet water, and<sup>7</sup> its name is Arethusa. 7. When the war with the Helvetii was ended,<sup>8</sup> ambassadors from almost all Gaul came to Caesar to congratulate<sup>9</sup> him. 8. This state has a very great reputation<sup>10</sup> for valour. 9. Caesar, having delayed for a few days in Asia, heard that Pompey had been seen in Cyprus.<sup>11</sup> 10. Vercingetorix, on receiving news of Caesar's arrival,

<sup>1</sup>Abl. Abs.

<sup>2</sup>Express simply by the Genitive of *dies*. You will have three different Genitives. Arrange them with an eye to clearness. Observe that the phrase, "during those days," depends on "the manner," and should, therefore, be in the Genitive. If the idea of duration depended on a verb, the Accusative of duration of time would be used. See "for a few days" in sentence 9. A good working rule is: When one noun depends on another it is put in the Genitive, or one noun governs another in the Genitive.

N.B.—The English preposition connecting these nouns may be *of, for, with, during*, etc.

<sup>3</sup>Say, "Time was given to the Germans neither of concerting," etc., and observe that "of concerting" depends on the noun "time." To concert measures = *consilium habere*.

<sup>4</sup>Observe that "may" and "will" are used in an idiomatic sense. Say, "It is (the lot) of any (*quivis*) man to err; it is the mark of nobody but (*nisi*) of a fool (*insipiens*) to," etc.

<sup>5</sup>So...as, *tam ...quam*. Narrow = *angustus*.

<sup>6</sup>Do not be afraid to use *cum* in both senses. *Cum*, like the English *with*, means both *along with* and *against* when used with a verb of fighting.

<sup>7</sup>Closer connection would be, "to which the name is Arethusa."

<sup>8</sup>Abl. Abs. and observe that the phrases, "with the Helvetii," and "from almost all Gaul," depend on nouns. <sup>9</sup>Supine.

<sup>10</sup>*opinio*. Observe that "for valour" depends on the noun "reputation."

<sup>11</sup>Cyprus was regarded by the Romans as a small island.

raised the siege<sup>12</sup> of Gergovia and set out to meet<sup>13</sup> him.<sup>14</sup> The latter<sup>15</sup> had commenced to besiege Noviodunum, a town of the Bituriges situated on his route. When<sup>16</sup> ambassadors came to him to ask that he would pardon them and spare their lives, he orders them<sup>17</sup> to give up their arms, to bring out their horses, and give him hostages.

<sup>12</sup>*oppugnatione desistere.*

<sup>13</sup>*obviam proficisci* + Dative = to set out to meet.

<sup>14</sup>It would be clearer to express the proper name again, especially as the next sentence is to begin with a pronoun.

<sup>15</sup>Use the correct pronoun to indicate a change of subject.

<sup>16</sup>Show the connection by inserting "from which town" at the beginning of this sentence.

<sup>17</sup>It will be easier to put the rest of this sentence in the Passive and leave out "them," "their" and "him."

## LESSON XLI.

### THE DATIVE CASE.

1. Verbs signifying to command, obey, serve, and resist, verbs and expressions of advantage and disadvantage, and compounds of *sum* govern the Dative Case; as,

*Caesar Labieno scribit ut decimae legioni praesit.* Caesar writes (commands by letter) Labienus that he is to take command of the tenth legion.

2. Some adjectives govern the Dative, *e.g.*, *utilis*, *gratus*, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *proximus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, *accommodatus*, *paratus*, *similis* (of external resemblance), but many of these also take *ad* with the Accusative, especially in the sense of *having an aptitude for*: as,

(a) *Locus castris idoneus erat.* The place was suitable for a camp.

(b) *Intellectum est nostros minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem.* It was seen that our men were

little suited for an enemy of this kind (had no aptitude for coping with an enemy of this kind).

3. The agent after the Gerundive is expressed by the Dative instead of *a* with the Ablative: as,

*Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda.* Everything had to be done by Caesar at one time.

(*b*) If the verb from which the Gerundive comes governs the Dative, there will be two Datives: as,

*Senatui populo parendum est.* The senate must be obeyed by the people.

(*c*) To avoid the use of two Datives where ambiguity would arise, use *a* with the Ablative for the agent, or let the agent be understood from the context, or use a different construction.

4. The Dative Case with the verb *sum* is used to indicate possession: as,

*Puero liber est.* There is a book to the boy.

Or

*Puer librum habet.* The boy has a book.

*Caesar dixit sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse.* Caesar said that there was able to be no friendship to him with them (*i.e.*, that he could have no friendship with them).

5. Verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *de*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, and *sub* take a Dative of the remoter object: as,

*Germanis metum injicere*, to inspire the Germans with fear (*lit.*, to throw in fear to the Germans).

But if the literal, physical meaning of the verb is meant, the preposition may be repeated before the noun: as,

*Se in ignem injicere*, to throw oneself into the fire.

6. The following idiomatic Datives (to which the name Predicative Dative is sometimes given) should be learned by heart:

*auxilio esse*, to be an assistance

*curae esse*, to be a subject for care

*dolori esse*, to be a cause of grief



odio esse, *to be hateful to, or to be hated by (used as the Passive of odi)*

ornamento esse, *to be a distinction*

subsidio esse, *to be a reinforcement*

cordi esse, *to be dear (lit., to the heart)*

detrimento esse, *to be a source of loss*

impedimento esse, *to be a hindrance*

praesidio esse, *to be a protection*

usui esse, *to be of use, or useful.*

This Predicative Dative (or Dative of Purpose, as it is often called) is mostly used with the verb *esse*, but it is also common with *habere*, *dare*, *mittere*, *proficisci*, *venire*, *relinquere*, and such like: as,

*Aduatuci auxilio Nervii veniebant.* The Aduatuci were coming to the assistance of the Nervii.

N. B.—Observe that the person to whom the thing is an assistance, a hindrance, a protection, etc., is also in the Dative case.

#### Table of Fifth Declension.

Res, <sup>1</sup> a thing	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> res	res
<i>Gen.</i> rei	rerum
<i>Dat.</i> rei	rebus
<i>Acc.</i> rem	res
<i>Abl.</i> re	rebus

All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dies* and *meridies*, which are Masculine. *Dies* is Feminine in the Singular in the sense of a period of time, or date.

Translate into English:

1. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re<sup>1</sup> ad laborem ferendum emollescere homines atque

<sup>1</sup>res is a thing in the broadest sense. It means anything at all which the context will permit, such as matter, circumstance, event, fact, deed, condition, case, news, manoeuvre.



effeminari arbitrabantur. 2. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum<sup>2</sup> existimavit. 3. Exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res<sup>3</sup> latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat. 4. Cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.<sup>4</sup> 5. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, castris praesidio relictis, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. 6. His persuaderi,<sup>5</sup> ut diutius morarentur, neque suis<sup>6</sup> auxilium ferrent, non poterat. 7. Cum sibi<sup>7</sup> quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. 8. Caesar inveniebat omnes Nervios trans flumen consedissee, adventumque ibi Romanorum expectare; mulieres<sup>8</sup> quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur,<sup>9</sup> in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

<sup>2</sup>What about the agent with this Gerundive?

<sup>3</sup>*Manœuvre.* <sup>4</sup>What Dative is this?

<sup>5</sup>Literally, "It was not able to be persuaded to these."

<sup>6</sup>Why Dative? *auxilium ferre* is equal to *subvenire*.

<sup>7</sup>Dative of advantage.

<sup>8</sup>Acc., object of *conjecisse*. *Nervios* is the subject of *consedissee*, *expectare*, and *conjecisse*.

<sup>9</sup>Why Subjunctive?

### Translate into Latin:

1. Merchants have no access<sup>1</sup> to the Nervii. 2. On receiving this news Caesar sent forward scouts and centurions to<sup>2</sup> choose a suitable place for a camp. 3. The two legions which had been raised last brought up the rear<sup>3</sup> and served<sup>4</sup> as a protection for the baggage. 4. So well<sup>5</sup> prepared were the enemy for the battle that our men had<sup>6</sup> no time to take the coverings

<sup>1</sup>Use *esse* instead of *habere*. Access to, *aditus ad*. <sup>2</sup>*qui*.

<sup>3</sup>Say, "closed the whole column" (*agmen*). <sup>4</sup>Say *were*.

<sup>5</sup>*tam* alone will do here for "so well." <sup>6</sup>*desum*.

off<sup>7</sup> their shields. 5. Caesar, snatching<sup>8</sup> a shield from a soldier in the rear,<sup>9</sup> because he himself had come without one,<sup>10</sup> advanced into the front rank. 6. Now<sup>11</sup> that hope was brought to the soldiers by his arrival, the attack of the enemy was checked for a little while.<sup>12</sup> 7 Labienus sent the tenth legion to help<sup>13</sup> our men. 8. Sabinus thought that a lieutenant ought not to fight with<sup>14</sup> such<sup>15</sup> a host of enemies except on favourable ground.

<sup>7</sup>*ad* with the Gerundive. To take covers off=*detrudere tegumenta*, and mind the case of "shields."

<sup>8</sup>Abl. Abs. To snatch=*detrahere*, and mind the Case of "soldier." <sup>9</sup>*ab novissimis*.

<sup>10</sup>Express the noun again. You cannot be too definite.

<sup>11</sup>Abl. Abs. Use *inferre* for "bring," and see that you put your connecting word first. What is the word which carries the mind back to what has presumably gone before?

<sup>12</sup>For a little while=*paulum*.

<sup>13</sup>Express "to help" without using a verb.

<sup>14</sup>Use the Gerundive of *dimico* impersonally. Use *cum* for "with."

<sup>15</sup>"Such" here means "so great."

## LESSON XLII.

### THE ABLATIVE CASE.

1. Review the following Ablatives which have already been treated:

(a) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* to express the agent.

(b) The Ablative with *a* or *ab*, *e* or *ex*, to indicate the person from whom a thing is asked.

(c) The Ablative with *cum* to express accompaniment.

(d) The Ablative without a preposition to express cause, manner, means, and instrument.

(e) The Ablative of price.

(f) The Ablative Absolute.

(g) The Ablative without a preposition to express a point of time.

(h) The Ablative without a preposition to express place where, with certain names of towns, etc.

2. The verbs *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor* govern the Ablative Case; but in the Gerundive construction they are treated as though they were transitive: as,

*In spem potiundorum castrorum venerant.* They had been entertaining hopes of taking possession of the camp (lit., they had come into the hope of, etc.).

(b) Verbs (e.g., *egeo* and *careo*) and adjectives expressing the idea of "lacking" govern the Ablative. *Egeo* also takes the Genitive.

3. The following adjectives are followed by the Ablative without a preposition: *praeditus*, *contentus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *fretus*, and *liber*: as,

*Dignus honore*, worthy of honour.

*Fretus virtute militum*, relying on the valour of the soldiers.

*Liber metu*, free from fear.

4. The Ablative, like the Genitive, is used with an adjective to describe a noun: as,

*Vir summa virtute*, a man of the greatest valour.

There is little difference between the Genitive and the Ablative of description, but the Ablative and not the Genitive should be used when speaking of an external part of the body: as,

*Viri capillo promisso*, men with flowing hair.

But

*Viri tantulae staturae* (or *tantula statura*), men of such very small stature.

Here the reference is to the whole body, not to a part of it.

N. B.—An adjective always accompanies the Genitive or Ablative of description. Of course, a Genitive which takes the place of an adjective will do as well: as, *Clavi digiti pollicis crassitudine*, nails of the thickness of a thumb.

5. The Ablative without a preposition is used to express the parentage from which one is descended: as, *Aeneas dea natus est*. Aeneas was born of a goddess.

If the ancestry is remote, the preposition is expressed: as,

*Belgae orti sunt a Germanis*. The Belgae were descended from the Germans.

6. The Ablative without a preposition expresses time within which: as,

*Pons decem diebus aedificatus est*. A bridge was built within ten days.

*Inter* (or *intra*) *decem dies* is also used.

7. The Ablative expresses by how much one thing exceeds another: as,

*Hibernia est dimidio minor quam Britannia*. Ireland is less by a half than Britain.

So also *multis annis post* (many years after), *multis annis ante* (many years before). Literally translated, these phrases are "afterwards by many years," etc.

N.B.—*Post* and *ante* are adverbs here. If *post* and *ante* are used as prepositions, they are placed first and govern their own case: as, *post multos annos*, etc.

8. The Comparative Degree governs the Ablative: as,

(a) *Puer est grandior patre*. The boy is taller than his father.

(b) *Novi neminem fortiores Caesare*. I know no one braver than Caesar.

Latin has also the word *quam* (than). If *quam* is used the two nouns compared are in the same Case: as,

(a) *Puer est grandior quam pater*.

(b) *Novi neminem fortiores quam Caesarem*.

N. B.—The Ablative may be substituted for *quam* and the Nominative, or *quam* and the Accusative, but not for *quam* and any other Case: as,

*Locus erat magis idoneus castris quam urbi*. The place was more suitable for a camp than for a city.



In this sentence *urbe* for *quam urbi* is not allowable.

9. The Ablative without a preposition is used with names of towns, small islands, and the words *domus* and *rus* to express the place from which one goes or comes.

*Roma venit.* He comes from Rome.

10. The Ablative without a preposition specifies in what respect a statement is true: as, *claudus altero pede* (lame in one foot), *nulla re inferior* (inferior in nothing). This Ablative is called the Ablative of Specification, or Ablative of Respect.

11. The Ablative is used with *totus* without a preposition in the sense of "throughout": as,

*Caesar nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit.* Caesar dispatches messengers throughout the whole Aeduan state.

12. The Ablative without a preposition expresses the route by which: as,

*Porta Collina urbem intrat.* He enters the city by the Colline gate.

13. The following are the common prepositions which govern the Ablative: *a* or *ab*, *coram*, *cum*, *de*, *ex* or *e*, *prae*, *pro*, *sine*, *in*, *sub*. *In* and *sub* take the Accusative when there is motion to or towards.

14. With regard to the expression or omission of the preposition, a good working rule is: Express the preposition in Latin wherever you have it in English, unless you have a definite rule for omitting it.

(a) *Caesar cum Gallis pugnavit.* Caesar fought with the Gauls.

(b) *Legiones circum Aquileiam hiemabant.* The legions were wintering around Aquileia.

### Comparison of Adjectives

The Comparative Degree of an adjective is obtained by adding *ior*, and the Superlative by adding *issimus* to the Genitive of the Positive, minus the termination: as,

altus	altior	altissimus
audax	audacior	audacissimus

The Comparative Degree is thus declined:

*Singular*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altior	altius
<i>Gen.</i>	altioris	altioris	altioris
<i>Dat.</i>	altiori	altiori	altiori
<i>Acc.</i>	altiorem	altiorem	altius
<i>Abl.</i>	altiore	altiore	altiore

*Plural*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	altiores	altiores	altiora
<i>Gen.</i>	altiorum	altiorum	altiorum
<i>Dat.</i>	altioribus	altioribus	altioribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiores	altiores	altiora
<i>Abl.</i>	altioribus .	altioribus	altioribus

Translate into English:

Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut,<sup>1</sup> quae bello<sup>2</sup> ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo<sup>3</sup> ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin<sup>4</sup> etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae<sup>5</sup> sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione summi<sup>6</sup> ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio<sup>7</sup> assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam<sup>8</sup> aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti.

<sup>1</sup>That they may have (persons) to whom they can sell what they have taken in war. Account for the three Subjunctives.

<sup>2</sup>Account for all the Ablatives in the extract. <sup>3</sup>Because.

<sup>4</sup>In fact, the Germans do not use even imported horses, etc.

<sup>5</sup>Those, which are born amongst them, small and ill-shaped = their native horses, small and ill-shaped as they are, they make capable, etc.

<sup>6</sup>These, by daily exercise, they make so that they are (capable) of the greatest toil.

<sup>7</sup>The preposition is generally omitted before *locus* (and *vestigium*, in the sense of *locus*) when accompanied by an adjective.

<sup>8</sup>*quisquam* is the usual pronoun for "anyone" after a negative.

## Translate into Latin:

1. It is not allowable<sup>1</sup> to remain longer<sup>2</sup> than a year in one place. 2. This mode of life<sup>3</sup> produces men of great stature. 3. Caesar makes the ships a little lower than those which we use in our sea. 4. As far as cavalry is concerned,<sup>4</sup> this state is by far the most powerful in all Gaul. 5. Since all preparations had been made<sup>5</sup> for the war in Britain, Caesar ordered Indutiomarus to come to him with 200 hostages. 6. Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid themselves<sup>6</sup> in the woods. 7. On the next day the enemy took up their position on the hills at a distance<sup>7</sup> from the camp. 8. At daybreak Caesar moves his camp, and within fifteen days arrives in the territory of the Belgae. 9. There were two routes by which they could leave<sup>8</sup> home. 10. When all preparations had been made<sup>9</sup> for<sup>10</sup> their departure<sup>11</sup> they appointed a date<sup>12</sup> on which<sup>13</sup> all were to assemble<sup>14</sup> on the banks of the Rhone. 11. On hearing this, Caesar sets out from Rome and hastens by forced marches<sup>15</sup> into Gaul. 12. In the eyes of the mother<sup>16</sup> the daughter was a greater favourite than the son.

<sup>1</sup>*licet*.      <sup>2</sup>*diutius*.      <sup>3</sup>Simply say *res* for "mode of life."

<sup>4</sup>"Cavalry" in the Ablative of Respect will express the whole clause.

<sup>5</sup>The Abl. Abs. stands for any kind of subordinate clause.

<sup>6</sup>*abdere se* means to hide oneself. Mind the case after *in*. They went into the woods to hide.

<sup>7</sup>*procul*.      <sup>8</sup>*exire*.      <sup>9</sup>Abl. Abs.      <sup>10</sup>*ad*.

<sup>11</sup>*profectio*.      <sup>12</sup>*dies*.      <sup>13</sup>Time when.

<sup>14</sup>"Were to assemble" is to be expressed by the Subjunctive. Observe the virtual command. They are to come together *to* the bank. Mind the case of "bank."

<sup>15</sup>*magnum iter* = a forced march.

<sup>16</sup>Say, "The daughter was dearer to," etc.

## LESSON XLIII.

## THE POSITION OF WORDS, PHRASES, AND CLAUSES.

1. Attributes, whether adjectives, substantives in apposition, or oblique cases taking the place of adjectives, usually follow their substantives, but

2. Demonstratives, and adjectives of number and quantity (*e.g.*, *magnus*), usually precede their substantives.

3. Rules 1 and 2 are often reversed for clearness, emphasis, or rhythm.

4. The preposition precedes its case.

5. Adverbs and adverbial phrases precede the verb or adjective which they modify.

6. Negatives precede what they negative, whether it be a word or a whole sentence. Do not say, *non ferri potest*, but *ferri non potest*.

7. Relative pronouns, interrogative pronouns, and adverbial conjunctions regularly stand at the head of their clauses.

8. In English the tendency is to bring together words which are closely connected in sense, but in Latin the tendency is to separate two words which are obviously in agreement, and to place between them all words, phrases and clauses which relate to them. In illustration, observe the following Latin sentence as it grows.

Caesar advanced. *Caesar processit*.

Here is our main subject in agreement with the main verb.

Caesar advanced into the front rank. *Caesar in primam aciem processit*.

*Caesar* and *processit* are the two words in agreement. They are separated, and *in primam aciem* is placed between.

Caesar, having set out from the exhortation of the tenth legion to the right wing, advanced into the front



rank. *Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, in primam aciem processit.*

*Caesar* and *profectus* are in agreement. They, too, are separated, and *ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu* is placed between. Note also the phrase *ab decimae legionis cohortatione*. The preposition *ab* and its Case *cohortatione* are separated, and *decimae legionis* is inserted between.

*Caesar*, having set out from the exhortation of the tenth legion to the right wing, advanced into the front rank when he saw his men hard pressed. *Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri vidit, in primam aciem processit.*

The phrase "when he saw his men hard pressed" tells the time when *Caesar* advanced, and so it, too, is placed between *Caesar* and *processit*.

The following clause also tells what he saw before he advanced, so it, too, will be placed between *Caesar* and *processit*:

and when he saw that, the standards being collected into one place, the soldiers of the twelfth legion being all huddled together were a hindrance to themselves in the battle,

Inserting this new clause, we have:

*Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit . . . in primam aciem processit.*

Now, after all these things, *Caesar* saw

(a) that all the centurions of the fourth cohort had been killed;

(b) that the standard-bearer had been slain;

(c) that the standard had been lost;

(d) that almost all the centurions of the other cohorts had been either wounded or killed;

(e) that among them P. Sextius Baculus, a very brave man, had been overcome with many severe wounds, so that he was not able to keep his feet.

It was because of all these things that Caesar advanced into the front rank himself. All these clauses are therefore placed between *Caesar* and *processit*. Expressing them by the Ablative Absolute, we now have:

*Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset; . . . . in primam aciem processit.*

Further, before advancing into the front rank, Caesar saw

- (a) that the rest were more inactive,
- (b) and that some in the rear were deserting the battle and going off,
- (c) that the enemy never stopped coming up from the lower ground in front,
- (d) and that they were pressing on from both sides,
- (e) and that matters were at a crisis,
- (f) and that there were no reinforcements which could be sent up.

Inserting all these clauses as before, we now have:

*Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem ease in angusto vidit*

(verb repeated for clearness) *neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, . . . in primam aciem processit.*

Finally, before Caesar advanced into the front rank

(a) he snatched a shield from a soldier in the rear,

(b) because he himself had come there without a shield.

Inserting these clauses as before, and adding the clauses which tell what Caesar did after he advanced into the front rank, we have the following

#### MODEL SENTENCE:

*Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent.*

Now take one of the subordinate clauses: *hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere.*

*Hostes* is the subject of *intermittere*, and they are separated by the words referring to them.

Examine all the subordinate clauses in this way. Notice where the order above referred to is not carried



out, and find the reasons. For example, in the clause, "*quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis*," *quartae cohortis* should be between the two Ablatives, *centurionibus* and *occisis*, but *quartae cohortis* is designedly placed first in order to mark the contrast with *religarum cohortium*, which is also placed first in the next clause.

Translate into English:

1. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit, exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. 2. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. 3. Caesar, cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones<sup>1</sup> conjungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. 4. Cum<sup>2</sup> jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, P. Sextius Baculus, primipili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. 5. Eodem fere

<sup>1</sup>*legiones* is the subject of *jungerent*; *sese* is the object.

<sup>2</sup>In this sentence we have several subordinate clauses of time before the subject, *Baculus*, is named. The reason is that *Baculus* is not intimately connected with any of them, and so they are all placed outside of, not between, *Baculus* and his verb *accurrunt*. Notice, on the other hand, that in the first three sentences, the subject Caesar is closely connected with the intervening clauses. In the first sentence it was Caesar that received the hostages, in the second it was Caesar who, etc.



tempore,<sup>3</sup> Publius Crassus,<sup>4</sup> cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine, et multitudine hominum, ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, legatus, exercitu expulso, interfectus esset, atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. 6. Atque,<sup>5</sup> in ea re<sup>6</sup> omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi<sup>7</sup> Adcantuannus,<sup>8</sup> qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios<sup>9</sup> appellant quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in

<sup>3</sup>*eodem fere tempore* is placed before the subject to indicate the connection with what has gone before. This is the regular practice.

<sup>4</sup>Notice the following pairs of words in agreement, and observe how the words referring to them are placed between: *Crassus.... intellegebat*; *quae pars....aestimanda*; *Praeconinus....interfectus esset*; *L. Manilius....profugisset*.

<sup>5</sup>A certain town, of which Adcantuannus was in command, had surrendered and the inhabitants were handing over their arms to the Roman soldiers.

<sup>6</sup>The phrase *in ea re* is placed early in the sentence to show the connection with what went before. See Note 5.

<sup>7</sup>The phrase, *alia ex parte oppidi*, is also introduced before the subject. If you did not place this phrase where it is, where would you place it? Besides, observe that the phrase is intimately connected in meaning with the previous clause. It was when the minds of our men were occupied with that matter (*i.e.*, with receiving the arms) in *one* part of the town, that Adcantuannus attempted to make a sally from *another* part.

<sup>8</sup>The verb for Adcantuannus is *impetravit*, but the sentence is so long that Caesar introduces the subject again towards the end—*cum his Adcantuannus*. *cum his*=*cum sexcentis devotis*, already mentioned. The gist of the whole sentence is as follows: *Adcantuannus cum sexcentis devotis eruptionem facere conatus....repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit*. Adcantuannus, though he attempted to make a sally with six hundred devoted followers, and was driven back into the town, nevertheless obtained this indulgence from Crassus that he should have the advantage of the same terms of surrender (as the other inhabitants of the town).

<sup>9</sup>From *quos illi soldurios* to *mori recusaretur* is simply a definition of the term *devotis*. Leave all this out and translate what remains.

vita commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam,<sup>10</sup> qui, eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusaret cum iis Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

<sup>10</sup>Account for the unusual position of *quisquam*, and point out all the pairs of words as in Note 4. Observe that in clauses like *ut omnibus . . . fruantur*, where no subject is expressed, the pair is *ut . . . fruantur*, because we at once associate a Subjunctive with the conjunction which requires the Subjunctive.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar, after delaying<sup>1</sup> a few days in their<sup>2</sup> territory, burnt<sup>3</sup> all their villages and buildings, cut down their corn, and retreated<sup>4</sup> into the territory of the Ubii. 2. On discovering these things,<sup>5</sup> the chiefs of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, held a conference with one another and resolved to renew the war. 3. On discovering these things, the chiefs of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, held a conference with one another, and, perceiving<sup>6</sup> that

<sup>1</sup>*moratus*=having delayed. A few days in their territory will go between *Caesar . . . moratus*.

<sup>2</sup>*eorum*. Where should it be placed?

<sup>3</sup>Notice the co-ordinate verbs, burnt, cut down, retreated. Latin prefers one main verb with the other clauses subordinate. Turn the clauses with "burnt" and "cut down" into the Abl. Abs., and make "retreated" your main verb.

<sup>4</sup>*se recipere*.

<sup>5</sup>Begin with "these things" in order to mark the connection with what went before. Notice that you have two co-ordinate verbs, "held" and "resolved." Say, *inter se collocti*=having talked among themselves. Your pairs will now be: The chiefs . . . resolved (last word in the whole sentence); the chiefs . . . having talked; who . . . had come.

<sup>6</sup>Perceiving and discovering. Say when they perceived and (when) they discovered.

cavalry, ships and corn were wanting to the Romans, and discovering the small number<sup>7</sup> of our soldiers from the smallness of the camp,<sup>8</sup> resolved to renew the war. 4. On discovering these things, the chiefs of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, held a conference with one another, and, perceiving that cavalry, ships and corn were wanting to the Romans, and discovering the small number of our soldiers from the small extent of the camp (which<sup>9</sup> was even more contracted than usual,<sup>10</sup> because Caesar had taken over<sup>11</sup> the legions without baggage<sup>12</sup>) resolved to renew the war.

<sup>7</sup>Small number = *paucitas*.

<sup>8</sup>Smallness = *exiguitas*. The new pairs will be: when (they) ....perceived; and (when they)....discovered. The English "they" is expressed in the verb as usual, but you can imagine it to be after "when," where the subject would be if expressed. There is no need to repeat "when," because "discovered," being in the Imperfect Subjunctive like "perceived," it will be at once evident that "when" is understood.

<sup>9</sup>Remember that *castra* is Plural Neuter.

<sup>10</sup>"More contracted than usual" is to be expressed simply by the comparative of *angustus*.

<sup>11</sup>Observe the pairs in the part which has been added: which ....more contracted; Caesar....had taken over.

<sup>12</sup>Emphasize the phrase, "without baggage," by placing it out of its usual position.

## LESSON XLIV.

### THE POSITION OF WORDS (*continued*).

1. Most subordinate clauses come before the principal verb. See the model sentence in the previous exercise.
2. Final clauses frequently come after the principal verb. See last clause of the model sentence.
3. Indirect questions often come after the principal verb.
4. Clauses of result come after the principal verb.



5. The position of the following conjunctions should be noticed :

- (a) *nam* (for) always the first word.
- (b) *namque* (for) always the first word.
- (c) *enim* (for) after one, rarely after two words.
- (d) *itaque* (therefore) almost always first.
- (e) *igitur* (therefore) usually after one or two words.
- (f) *etiam* (even) immediately before the word it emphasizes; *quoque* and *quidem* immediately after.
- (g) *tamen* (nevertheless) first except for emphasis.
- (h) *autem* and *vero* (now, moreover, but) after one word or two, if the two are closely connected.

6. Except when there is a complete change in the subject matter, every Latin sentence should have at the beginning or near the beginning a word which will carry the mind back to the preceding sentence. This is done by such words as are detailed in 5 above, or by such words as :

(a) *interim, interea*, meanwhile (*i.e.*, while the events related in the previous sentence or sentences were going on).

(b) *hic, is, or ille*, this or that (person or thing mentioned in the previous sentence).

(c) *qui*, who or which (referring to somebody or something immediately preceding).

(d) a noun or pronoun (if it is a noun or pronoun repeated from the preceding sentence).

(e) a noun or pronoun in contrast with one in the preceding sentence.

(f) a verb (if the subject of the verb is the same as the subject of the verb in the sentence immediately preceding).

(g) an appropriate conjunction.

(h) adverbs and adverbial phrases of time and place, *e.g.*, *tum, postero die, eo, ibi, huc*, etc.

Translate into English :

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri<sup>1</sup> tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere,



neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes<sup>2</sup> vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod<sup>3</sup> cum animum advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri,<sup>4</sup> simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc<sup>5</sup> unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

(The following notes refer to the connectives between the periods.)

<sup>1</sup>*nostri* is implied in *utrisque*. *tamen*, 5 (g).

<sup>2</sup>*hostes* is in contrast with *nostri*, 6 (e). *vero*, 5 (h).

<sup>3</sup>*quod*, 6 (c). <sup>4</sup>*nostri* is suggested in *iis*. <sup>5</sup>*hoc*, 6 (b).

## LESSON XLV.

### THE POSITION OF WORDS (*continued*).

1. Review the rules for the position of words, and the connection of clauses and periods.

2. It has been said that words in agreement are generally separated, but the relative should be placed as near as possible to the antecedent. Bring the antecedent, if necessary, towards the end of its own clause: as,

*Ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt qui se excusarent.* *Legati* would naturally stand at the beginning.

3. Indirect narration comes after the principal verb, because the verb of speaking is quite unimportant, and in fact is often omitted.

## Translate into English:

Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen<sup>1</sup> uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo<sup>2</sup> cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa<sup>3</sup> autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His<sup>4</sup> rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed<sup>5</sup> ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent, ut hostes<sup>6</sup> impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

(The references are to the rules in Lesson XLIV)

<sup>1</sup>*quod flumen.* Instead of bringing the antecedent *flumen* to the end of the previous clause Caesar has repeated it after the relative. This is just as clear, and at the same time gives more prominence to the historical fact contained in the relative clause.

<sup>2</sup>*Eo*, 6 (h).      <sup>3</sup>*Ripa*, noun repeated, 6 (d).      *autem*, 5 (h).

<sup>4</sup>*His*, 6 (b).      <sup>5</sup>*Sed*, 6 (g).      <sup>6</sup>*ut hostes*, 4.

## Translate into Latin:

There was a marsh of no great extent between our army and the army<sup>1</sup> of the enemy. The latter<sup>2</sup> were waiting to see if our men would cross this;<sup>3</sup> our men, also,<sup>4</sup> were under arms ready to attack them while in disorder, if the first attempt to cross should be made by them. In the meantime<sup>5</sup> the battle was begun by the cavalry of both armies coming into action. As neither army<sup>6</sup> would take the initiative in crossing the swamp, Caesar led his men back into camp, not-

(The references are to Lesson XLIV)

<sup>1</sup>No need to repeat.

<sup>2</sup>It would be clearer to repeat the noun.      <sup>3</sup>See 6 (b).

<sup>4</sup>*nostri autem.* *nostri* gives the contrast with *hostes*, 6 (d). *autem*, 5 (h).      <sup>5</sup>See 6 (a).

<sup>6</sup>*ubi*, 6 (g), and *neutri* (neither army) in the plural will embrace both "the enemy" and "our men" previously mentioned.

withstanding the fact that our cavalry had the best of it in the skirmish with the enemy's horse.

N.B.—In the last sentence observe that “notwithstanding the fact that,” etc., happened before Caesar led his men back, and the sentence should, therefore, end thus: *Caesar suos in castra reduxit.*

### VOCABULARY.

of no great extent	not great
to wait to see if	<i>expectare si</i>
while in disorder	<i>impeditus</i>
the first attempt to cross	a beginning ( <i>initium</i> ) of crossing
the battle was begun by	it was fought between the two lines in a cavalry battle
take the initiative, etc.	make a beginning of crossing
notwithstanding the fact, etc.	express simply by an Abl. Abs. thus, the cavalry battle being more favourable ( <i>secundus</i> ) to our men

### LESSON XLVI.

#### ABSTRACT TERMS.

1. In English abstract terms are common. In Latin they are to be avoided except when the abstract quality itself is under discussion: as,

(a) Caesar takes possession of Rome. *Caesar Romam occupat.*

But

(b) Cicero wrote a treatise on friendship. *Cicero de amicitia scripsit.*

2. Abstract terms may often be avoided by expressing the meaning by a verb.

(a) He made these preparations—he prepared these things.

(b) He took his departure—he went away.

(c) The enemy beat a retreat—the enemy took themselves back, or turned their backs.

3. The dependent question gets rid of an abstract noun.

(a) He did not perceive the nature and extent of the danger—he did not perceive of what kind (*qualis*) and how great the danger was.

(b) His destination was a general secret=nobody knew where he was going.

Translate into English, using as many abstract terms as you can:

1. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus,<sup>1</sup> discedens<sup>2</sup> ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat,<sup>3</sup> legatis imperat,<sup>4</sup> quos legionibus praefecerat,<sup>5</sup> uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas<sup>6</sup> veteresque reficiendas<sup>7</sup> curarent.<sup>8</sup> 2. Caesar, etsi intellegebat qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum<sup>9</sup> res ab instituto consilio<sup>10</sup> deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit.

<sup>1</sup>consulship.

<sup>2</sup>departure.

<sup>3</sup>custom.

<sup>4</sup>injunctions.

<sup>5</sup>in command.

<sup>6</sup>construction.

<sup>7</sup>repairing.

<sup>8</sup>Translate by see to, or urge on.

<sup>9</sup>eum = Indutiomarus.

<sup>10</sup>consilio = the plan of Indutiomarus, which was to hold out against the invasion of Caesar with a view to obtaining the chief power in his own state for himself. After some time, however, Indutiomarus found that all the chief men were deserting him, and so he thought it wise to send ambassadors to Caesar with many plausible excuses. *ea* = these plausible excuses (which have been mentioned in a previous chapter).

Translate into Latin, avoiding abstract terms wherever you can:

The enemy immediately made a hasty march to the river Axona, which,<sup>1</sup> as has already been said, flowed past the rear of our camp. Finding a ford,<sup>2</sup> they made an attempt to effect a crossing with part of their forces for the purpose of storming the fort of which Q. Titurius was in command.

<sup>1</sup>Which has been said to be behind our camp.

<sup>2</sup>Make the connection plain by saying, "There a ford having been found." See Lesson XLIV., 6 (h).



## LESSON XLVII.

## THE IMPERATIVE MOOD. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN THE PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

1. The Imperative Mood is used only when a command is 2nd person and affirmative: as,  
*Desilite, inquit.* "Jump down," said he. (Direct narration is used with *inquit*.)

2. If the command is 2nd person and negative, use *noli* (be unwilling) and the Infinitive: as, *Noli putare*, do not suppose; or *ne* and Present or Perfect Subjunctive, as *Ne putes*, or *Ne putaveris*.

3. All other commands and exhortations are to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive, whether they are negative or affirmative: as,

(a) *Pro patria pugnemus.* Let us fight for our native land.

(b) *Aut bibat aut abeat.* Let him drink or depart.

(c) *Ne desperemus.* Let us not despair.

The following table may be useful:

## Commands and Exhortations.

1st and 3rd Persons	2nd Person
(a) Affirmative = Pres. Subj.	(a) Affirmative = Imper.
(b) Negative = <i>ne</i> and Pres. Subj.	Mood.
	(b) Negative = <i>noli</i> + Infin. (or <i>ne</i> and Perf. or Pres. Subj.)

4. Wishes are expressed by *utinam* and the

(a) Present Subjunctive for a wish which may be realized: as,

*Utinam id sit, quod spero.* May my hope be realized.

(b) Imperfect Subjunctive for a vain wish in present time; as

*Utinam Caesar adesset.* Would that Caesar were present (now).

*Utinam Caesar adfuisset.* Would that Caesar had been present (then).

The negative is *ne* or *non*.

5. The Subjunctive is used in questions of perplexity, where no answer is really expected:

(a) *Quid faciam?* What am I to do?

(b) *Quid facerem?* What was I to do? What should I have done?

#### Table of the Imperative Mood.

<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2nd Conj.</i>
<i>2nd Sing.</i> porta	<i>2nd Sing.</i> mone
<i>2nd Pl.</i> portate	<i>2nd Pl.</i> monete
<i>3rd Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>
<i>2nd Sing.</i> mitte	<i>2nd Sing.</i> desili
<i>2nd Pl.</i> mittite	<i>2nd Pl.</i> desilite

Translate into English:

1. Unusquisque se non corpus suum, sed conjugem ac liberos parvos armis protegere putet. 2. Delige centenos viros ex omni pedit<sup>1</sup> atque equite, cum quibus ad me vigilia prima venias;<sup>2</sup> nunc corpora curare tempus est. 3. Noli putare, Brute, quemquam uberorem ad dicendum fuisse quam C. Gracchum. 4. Ariovistus ita respondit: se prius in Galliam venisse, quam populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet,<sup>3</sup> cur in suas possessiones veniret?<sup>3</sup> Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam,<sup>4</sup> sicut illam nostram.

<sup>1</sup>*pedes* and *eques* are used even in the Sing. instead of *peditatus* and *equitatus*. So *miles* in the sense of soldiery, soldiers.

<sup>2</sup>Why Subj. ? <sup>3</sup>Account for this Subj.

<sup>4</sup>*Hanc Galliam*, this Gaul where they stood = this part of Gaul.

Translate into Latin:

1. God save our gracious king. 2. Would that Caesar had not been killed. 3. Would that Caesar were alive. 4. What was he to do when all his countrymen were conspiring against Rome? 5. (Turn sentences 2 and 3 of the Latin exercise into Oratio Obliqua.) 6. (Turn passage 4 of the Latin exercise into Oratio Recta.)

## LESSON XLVIII.

## TRANSITIVE VERBS USED INTRANSITIVELY.

1. In English many verbs are used both transitively and intransitively: as,

(a) The enemy is increasing (intransitive).

(b) Caesar increases his army (transitive).

2. In Latin the same verb must not be used both transitively and intransitively as in English. The Latin for (a) and (b) is: (a) *Hostes crescunt*. (b) *Caesar exercitum auget*. *Cresco* is intransitive, and *augeo* is transitive.

3. But there are not always two verbs in Latin with the same meaning, the one transitive and the other intransitive. When it is necessary to get the intransitive meaning from a transitive verb, turn the verb into the Passive Voice, or add the Accusative of the reflexive pronoun: thus,

(a) *Caesar castra movet*. Caesar moves his camp.

(b) *Tellus movetur* (or *movet se*). The earth moves (*lit.*, the earth is moved, or moves itself).

## Translate into English:

1. Ad haec Caesar respondit: se, magis consuetudine sua, quam merito eorum, civitatem conservaturum, si, priusquam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent.<sup>1</sup>

2. Romani ponte Ticinum jungunt,<sup>2</sup> tutandique pontis causa castellum insuper imponunt. 3. Caesar eas cohortes cum exercitu suo conjunxit.<sup>3</sup> 4. P. Crassum

<sup>1</sup>*se dedidissent*. *dedo* is transitive and means *I give up*. *si se dedidissent* therefore = if they gave themselves up. This may be rendered in English by "if they surrendered," because "surrender" in English is used both transitively and intransitively. In Latin, however, you must say, "if they surrendered themselves," because *dedo* is transitive in Latin and must have an object.

<sup>2</sup>*jungo* is transitive, *Ticinum* being the object.

<sup>3</sup>*conjungo* is transitive and has *cohortes* for its object.



*cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes conjungantur.*<sup>4</sup> 5. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent.<sup>5</sup> 6. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese<sup>6</sup> ei dedituros atque imperata facturos.

<sup>4</sup>Here the intransitive meaning is wanted, and so *conjungantur* is Passive Voice. In English we could say simply, "lest so great tribes should unite," but in Latin you must say either, (a) lest so great tribes be united, or (b) lest so great tribes unite themselves (*se conjungant*).

<sup>5</sup>"That the legions should gradually unite themselves." Instead of *sese conjungerent*, we might say *conjungerentur*.

<sup>6</sup>Notice that *sese* might be expected twice, once for the Accusative, subject of the Infinitive *dedituros* and again for the Accusative object of the Infinitive, thus: *pollicenturque sese ei sese dedituros*; and they promise that they (*sese*) will surrender themselves (*sese* again) to him. In all such sentences the reflexive is expressed once only. Which one do you think is omitted, subject or object?

### Translate into Latin:

1. Next day they move their camp from that place.
2. Lictors, clear away<sup>1</sup> the crowd.
3. Before the enemy could move from the spot, Caesar crossed the river.
4. When the lictors approached, the rabble moved off.<sup>1</sup>
5. Caesar ordered the inhabitants of the town to surrender their persons and their arms.
6. The Gauls immediately sent ambassadors to Caesar to say that they had not entered into a league against Rome,<sup>2</sup> and that they had not<sup>3</sup> united<sup>4</sup> with the Germans.
7. Caesar sent word<sup>5</sup> to the cohorts who had

<sup>1</sup>*summoveo*, like *moveo*, is transitive.

<sup>2</sup>Express the meaning as usual.

<sup>3</sup>Instead of *not . . . and not*, say *neither . . . nor*.

<sup>4</sup>Should you express *se* twice in this sentence?

<sup>5</sup>This is equivalent to a command. Mind your construction.



crossed the river to effect a junction<sup>6</sup> with the main body. 8. Caesar forbade the Gauls to join the Germans. 9. The mules,<sup>7</sup> baggage and all,<sup>8</sup> rolled<sup>9</sup> down into the valley.

<sup>6</sup>Avoid the abstract noun by using a verb. *iumentum*.

<sup>8</sup>Say, "along with their loads" (*onus, -eris*).

<sup>9</sup>*devolve* is transitive.

## LESSON XLIX.

### SOME IDIOMS.

1. *Curo* with the Accusative and the Gerundive expresses the idea that somebody is superintending the doing of something: as,

*Labienus naves aedificandas esse curat.* Labienus sees to (superintends, or urges on) the construction of the ships (lit., takes care that the ships should be built).

2. The Gerundive is often added in a sort of explanatory way: as,

*Omnis cetera praeda diripienda data est.* All the rest of the booty was given to be plundered.

3. (a) A contrary-to-fact condition in past time is expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive followed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive: as,

*Nisi nox proelio intervenisset, nemo superfuisset.* If night had not put a stop to the battle no one would have survived.

(b) If the above sentence comes under the influence of a verb of speaking, the main clause *nemo superfuisset* becomes, of course, Accusative and Infinitive (*superfuisset* taking the form *superfuturum fuisse*). See Lesson XXIII.

*Dixit, nisi nox proelio intervenisset, neminem superfuturum fuisse.* He said that unless night had put a stop to the battle, no one would have survived.

(c) If instead of a verb requiring the Accusative and Infinitive, a verb requiring the Subjunctive is prefixed, *superfuisset* becomes *superfuturus fuerit*: as,

*Tanta erat caedes ut, nisi nox proelio intervenisset, nemo superfuturus fuerit.* So great was the slaughter that, unless night had put a stop to the battle, no one would have survived.

N. B.—When the Passive is required, the Gerundive is used: as,

*Tanta erat caedes ut, nisi nox proelio intervenisset, nemo conservandus fuerit.* So great was the slaughter that, unless night had put a stop to the battle, no one would have been saved.

4. The idea that something was very near happening is expressed thus:

*Minimum* (or *haud multum*) *aberat quin consul interficeretur.* The consul came within an ace of being killed, narrowly escaped death, was very nearly killed (*lit.*, there was very little wanting but that the consul, etc.).

N. B.—In this construction *abesse* is always impersonal; it has the force of *desse*, and it is followed by *quin* + Subjunctive.

5. Notice also the impersonal *tantum abest*, followed by two *ut* clauses.

*Tantum abest ab eo ut malum mors sit, ut verear ne longius vivam.* So far is death from being an evil that I fear lest I may live too long (*lit.*, it is so far from this that death is an evil that I, etc.).

Translate into English:

1. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit. 2. Reliquum exercitum Sabino et Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit. 3. Non dubium fuit quin, nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent, ingens in eo

saltu accipienda clades fuerit. 4. Eo cum venisset, naves longas invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo quin paucis diebus deduci possent.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar ordered the lieutenants whom he had placed in charge of the legions to see to the building of as many ships as possible in the winter, and to look after the repairing of the old ones. 2. Caesar gave three legions to Fabius to take into the territory of the Morini. 3. If the rear had not been strengthened the Romans would have sustained a great disaster. 4. He said that, if the rear had not been strengthened, the Romans would have sustained a great disaster<sup>1</sup> 5. There was no doubt but that, if the rear had not been strengthened, the Romans would have sustained a great disaster. 6. There was no doubt but that, if the rear had not been strengthened, the Romans would have been defeated.<sup>2</sup> 7. So far am I from doing him an injury<sup>3</sup> that I intend<sup>4</sup> to confer a favour upon him.

<sup>1</sup>To sustain a disaster = *cladem accipere*.

<sup>2</sup>*vinco*. <sup>3</sup>Avoid the abstract noun.

<sup>4</sup>Express by the Future Participle of the verb *dare*. Favour = *beneficium*.

## LESSON L.

### THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSON.

1. A verb agrees with the First Person rather than with the Second or Third, and with the Second rather than with the Third: as,

(a) *Ego et tu ire debemus*. You and I ought to go.

(b) *Ego et Caesar ire debemus*. Caesar and I ought to go.

(c) *Tu et Caesar ire debetis*. You and Caesar ought to go.

The order is first, second, third. Do not put the First Person last, as in English.

2. Where there are several subjects the verb may be Plural as above. But the verb may agree with the subject nearest to it: as,

Neither you nor I was present. *Neque ego neque tu aderamus*, or *Neque ego aderam neque tu*.

3. Table of Ego (I) and Tu (thou).

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tu	nos	vos
<i>Gen.</i>	mei	tui	nostrum or nostri	vestrum or vestri
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	nobis	vobis
<i>Acc.</i>	me	te	nos	vos
<i>Abl.</i>	me	te	nobis	vobis

4. There is no third personal pronoun. Its place is supplied by the demonstratives, *hic*, *ille*, or *is*.

5. There is, however, a reflexive pronoun of the third person, viz.,

*Singular and Plural, all genders*

*Nom.* wanting

*Gen.* sui, of himself, (herself, itself, themselves)

*Dat.* sibi

*Acc.* se

*Abl.* se

N. B.—*Sese* is often used for *se* in the Accusative.

Translate into Latin:

1. Portum intramus ut naves hostium occupemus.
2. Ego<sup>1</sup> et tu in insula hiemabimus.
3. Insulam frequentabas ut frumentum comparares.
4. Cum tu in Britannia abesses, Galli bellum renovaverunt.
5. Praedam in aquam praecipitavimus.
6. Populo persuasisti ut classis centum navium aedificaretur.
7. Terra marique bellum geremus.
8. Cum hostes

<sup>1</sup>Personal pronouns must, of course, be expressed when there are more than one subject to the same verb. They are also expressed for contrast or emphasis.



fugaverimus, in castra nos recipiemus. 9. Cum tu et Caesar in Germania abessetis, nos castra muniebamus. 10. Longe a domo bellare non possumus. 11. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui jam primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Varenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, "quid dubitas," inquit, "Vorene?<sup>2</sup> aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis spectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit."

<sup>2</sup>O Vorenus. *Vorene* is Vocative Case. The Vocative = the Nominative of Address.

Translate into English:

1. Thou biddest me, O queen, tell thee how Troy fell.
2. If thou wishest to hear of Troy's last toil, although my mind shrinks from the remembrance of it, I shall begin.
3. They build a wooden horse and pretend that it is an offering to Pallas.
4. That report is brought to us.
5. They shut picked bodies of men into the womb of the horse without our knowing it.
6. They launched their ships and sailed to Tenedos.
7. We thought they had gone away to Greece.
8. We open the gates and sally forth to see their deserted camp.
9. We wonder at the hugeness of the horse.
10. Unhappy citizens, think ye the enemy has sailed away to Greece?
11. Put no faith in the horse, Trojans.
12. I fear the Greeks even when offering gifts.
13. If we had listened, Troy would now be standing.
14. Trojan shepherds were dragging a youth before King Priam.
15. I shall not deny, says he, that I am of Greek extraction.
16. Often did the Greeks desire to leave Troy.
17. With the blood of a maiden, O Greeks, ye pacified the winds when first ye came to Trojan shores.
18. I snatched myself from death and burst my bonds.
19. At these tears we grant

him his life. 20. Nor am I bound by any laws of my country. 21. We cleave the walls and lay open the fortifications of the city. 22. Thou shalt go as a messenger to my father. 23. Almighty Jove, if thou art moved by any prayers, grant us thine aid. 24. Thou hast freed the city from danger and the state from fear.

## SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

### I.

#### Use Indirect Narration:

I dare not go without an army into that part of Gaul which is in your hands, and I cannot mobilize my troops without a great deal of trouble. Besides<sup>1</sup>, it is a matter of wonder<sup>2</sup> to me what business<sup>3</sup> you have in my part of Gaul<sup>4</sup> which I have conquered in war.

<sup>1</sup>*autem.*

<sup>2</sup>Say, "it seems wonderful."

<sup>3</sup>*quid negotii.*

<sup>4</sup>Say, "in my Gaul."

### II.

#### Use Indirect Narration:

And one of the captives said: "What makes you run after this worthless<sup>1</sup> and scanty<sup>1</sup> booty, when you have now a chance<sup>2</sup> of getting rich?<sup>3</sup> In three hours you can reach Aduatuca; there the Roman army has amassed all its treasure;<sup>4</sup> the garrison is so small that even<sup>5</sup> the wall cannot be manned,<sup>6</sup> and no one dares venture outside the fortifications."

<sup>1</sup>*miser ac tenuis.*

<sup>2</sup>*licet.*

<sup>3</sup>*fortunatissimus.*

<sup>4</sup>*fortuna* in the plural.

<sup>5</sup>Not even, *ne . . . quidem.*

<sup>6</sup>*cingere.*

### III.

#### Use Indirect Narration:

My advice is safe in either event. If there is nothing amiss<sup>1</sup> you will reach the nearest legion without danger; if the whole of Gaul is acting in concert<sup>2</sup> with

<sup>1</sup>*nihil durius.*

<sup>2</sup>*consentire cum.*

the Germans, your only safety lies<sup>3</sup> in speed. As for<sup>4</sup> the plan of Cotta and those who differ from me, what is likely to be the outcome of it? If there is<sup>5</sup> no immediate danger to be feared in it,<sup>6</sup> there is at all events<sup>7</sup> starvation from a long blockade.

<sup>3</sup>Passive of *pono*.

<sup>4</sup>Say, "What result (*exitus*) has the plan of Cotta," etc.

<sup>5</sup>Use Gerundive for "is to be feared."

<sup>6</sup>Say, "in which." <sup>7</sup>*at certe*.

#### IV.

##### Use Indirect Narration:

You have to-day, soldiers, the opportunity<sup>1</sup> which you have been seeking; you hold the enemy on difficult and unfavourable ground;<sup>2</sup> show<sup>3</sup> to me, your leader, the same valour which you have often shown to Caesar, your commander-in-chief, and consider that he is present and is watching<sup>4</sup> everything with his own eyes.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*facultas*.

<sup>2</sup>*locus*.

<sup>3</sup>*praestare*.

<sup>4</sup>*cernere*.

<sup>5</sup>*coram*.

#### V.

When Litaviccus<sup>1</sup> was about thirty miles distant from Gergovia, he suddenly called the soldiers together and<sup>2</sup> with tears in his eyes addressed them as follows: "Where are we going, soldiers? All our cavalry, all our nobility has perished; the chief men of the state, Eporedorix and Viridomarus, have been falsely accused of treason by the Romans and<sup>3</sup> put to death without trial.<sup>4</sup> Learn these facts from the men them-

<sup>1</sup>Put the subject in the principal clause and let it be understood in the subordinate clause.

<sup>2</sup>Get rid of the "and." Latin tends to use subordinate clauses with few principal clauses. See that you do not put "soldiers" in the Ablative Absolute, if you are going to make that word the object of "addressed."

<sup>3</sup>Omit and use a participle for "accused."

<sup>4</sup>Without trial = *indicta causa* (Abl. Abs.).

selves who have escaped from the midst of the massacre; for, as my brothers and all my relatives have been killed, my grief<sup>5</sup> prevents me from telling you what has taken place.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>5</sup>You should generally avoid saying that a *thing* performs an act. Say, "I am prevented by my grief."

<sup>6</sup>Passive of *gerere*.

## VI.

Towards evening<sup>1</sup> he summoned a council and<sup>2</sup> exhorted his men to carry out his orders with the greatest care. He put the vessels which he had brought<sup>3</sup> from Metiosedum under the charge<sup>4</sup> of a Roman officer, and gave orders that at the end<sup>5</sup> of the fourth watch they were to go four miles down stream<sup>6</sup> in silence and wait for him there.

<sup>1</sup>*sub vesperum*.

<sup>2</sup>Make "put" and "gave" your principal verbs and have all others subordinate.

<sup>3</sup>Use *ferre* and *portare* for "portable things," otherwise *ducere*. Make appropriate compounds to suit the particular passage.

<sup>4</sup>Use *attribuere* with Accusative and Dative.

<sup>5</sup>Abl. Abs., using participle of *conficere*.

<sup>6</sup>Down stream = *secundo flumine*.

## VII.

At<sup>1</sup> daybreak our men had all been conveyed across the river, and the enemy's line was in sight. Sabinus exhorted his men not to forget<sup>2</sup> their former<sup>3</sup> valour and to imagine that Caesar was present in person, under whose leadership<sup>4</sup> they had often vanquished the foe. Then he gave the signal for battle. On the right wing, where the seventh legion had taken up its position, the enemy were routed on the first encoun-

<sup>1</sup>Put the first three sentences into one.

<sup>2</sup>Use *memoriam retinere*.      <sup>3</sup>*pristinus*.      <sup>4</sup>*ductus*.



ter<sup>5</sup> and put to flight. On the left, which was the position held by the tenth legion, the front ranks of the enemy were cut to pieces, yet the others kept up a brave resistance<sup>6</sup> and not a man<sup>7</sup> looked in the least inclined to fly. At this juncture, the seventh legion, learning what was taking place on their left, made a detour and advanced to attack the enemy from behind. Even<sup>8</sup> then not a man<sup>9</sup> stirred<sup>10</sup> from his place, and so they were all surrounded and slain.

<sup>5</sup>*conkursus*. Begin with this word and it will help the connection by referring you back to "battle."

<sup>6</sup>The Imperfect of *resistere* will express the idea.

<sup>7</sup>*et non* = *neque*. Use *nec quisquam* for "and not a man." Put *quisquam* at the end for emphasis.

<sup>8</sup>Not even = *ne* . . . *quidem*, with emphatic word between.

<sup>9</sup>See 7. <sup>10</sup>*loco cedere*.

## VIII.

The Suebi, who were commanded at this time by Ver-gorix, in order to test<sup>1</sup> the minds of the Aedui, sent ambassadors to Dumnorix, their king, with an offer<sup>2</sup> of peace if he was willing to buy it. Dumnorix scornfully rejected<sup>3</sup> the offer,<sup>4</sup> and in a voice loud enough<sup>5</sup> to reach the ears of the ambassadors as they withdrew, he boastfully remarked<sup>6</sup> to his friends that the Suebi were asking for peace through fear of war. When<sup>7</sup> the embassy returned, the Suebi greeted its report with shouts of laughter,<sup>8</sup> exclaiming on all sides that Dumnorix would soon find out whether they were consulting their own interests<sup>9</sup> or his when<sup>10</sup> they offered peace. A<sup>11</sup> few days later they engaged in conflict, the Gauls were defeated, and Dumnorix and his officers were slain.

<sup>1</sup>*emptare*. <sup>2</sup>*deferre*. <sup>3</sup>*respuere*.

<sup>4</sup>*condicio*, placed first to help the connection.

<sup>5</sup>Say, "in a voice so loud that," etc. <sup>6</sup>*gloriar*.

<sup>7</sup>Arrange the next few words so as to get a connecting idea first.

<sup>8</sup>*ridere*, verb; *risus*, noun. <sup>9</sup>*consuere*, with Dative.

<sup>10</sup>*in*, with Gerundive construction.

<sup>11</sup>Arrange to have only one principal clause.

## IX.

The<sup>1</sup> date was now past<sup>2</sup> on which the beleaguered inhabitants of Alesia had expected aid from their friends. The corn was all consumed, and they had no knowledge of what was going on in the outside world. A council was therefore called for the purpose of considering their plans for the future. Various opinions were expressed. Some were in favour of surrender, others were for a sally while their strength lasted,<sup>3</sup> but the motion of Critognatus is worthy of being placed on record<sup>4</sup> on account of its extraordinary<sup>5</sup> and diabolical<sup>6</sup> cruelty. "I move,"<sup>7</sup> said he, "that we neither surrender nor make a sortie, but that we kill all those who are incapable of active service, and that we live on their bodies until the relieving force arrives."

<sup>1</sup>The whole passage should be translated in three sentences, the first ending at "for the future," the second, at "cruelty." The last sentence may be given in direct narration.

<sup>2</sup>Use *praeterire*. <sup>3</sup>*suppetere*.

<sup>4</sup>Express the phrase, "worthy....record," by using the Gerundive of *praeterire*.

<sup>5</sup>*singularis*. <sup>6</sup>*nefarius*. <sup>7</sup>*censeo*.

## X.

When the news of Caesar's approach reached Pompey's ears he abandoned<sup>1</sup> his intention<sup>2</sup> of going to Syria, and at once set sail for Egypt. Landing at Pelusium, he applied to Ptolemy for permission to take refuge in Alexandria. In public Ptolemy gave a favourable answer to Pompey's messengers, and invited him to the capital, but in secret he laid a plot against him. Achilles, captain of his guards, a man of unusual daring, and Lucius Septimius, a military tribune, who had once commanded a company under<sup>3</sup> Pompey in his war with the pirates, were dispatched with orders to assassinate him. Pompey was easily

<sup>1</sup>*deponere*. <sup>2</sup>*consilium*. <sup>3</sup>*apud*.

induced to embark in a small boat<sup>4</sup> with few attendants, and there Achilles<sup>5</sup> and Septimius found the opportunity of putting their bloody design into execution.

<sup>4</sup>*navicula parvula.* <sup>5</sup>The subject and the voice have been changed too often to make a good Latin sentence. It may be advisable to rewrite the whole passage, changing the subject and the voice only when necessary.

## XI.

Alarmed<sup>1</sup> by the rapidity with which Caesar presented himself, the Germans immediately sent a delegation to see what could be done in the way of obtaining peace. Caesar's answer was an order to the effect that they must return into Germany and make their home in the territory of the Ubii. The ambassadors went back with their report. After<sup>2</sup> their departure, and without waiting to hear how his answer was received by the German people, Caesar began to make preparations for war, as he had grave doubts about their complying with his orders.

<sup>1</sup>The teacher should frequently give passages of his own to be done into Latin by his pupils without help of any kind. Suitable material may be obtained by translating the Latin exercises into idiomatic English. Compare the above with page 25, sentence 12.

<sup>2</sup>Observe that from "After their departure" to "German people" is nothing but a very free rendering of *interea*. Notice also that the connecting word *His* is purposely omitted in the translation in order to test the pupil. This should always be done as far as is consistent with good English.

## XII.

The bold youth was immediately surrounded by a mob of citizens, who<sup>1</sup> commanded him to disclose his identity, his destination, his business in the town, and his reason for climbing over the wall in the night-time instead<sup>2</sup> of coming through the gates. With the great-



est coolness<sup>3</sup> he<sup>4</sup> replied that he could not answer so many questions at once, and that it was not the business of civilians<sup>5</sup> to know his name or his intentions. Upon this<sup>6</sup> he was dragged with much violence before<sup>7</sup> the authorities and<sup>8</sup> he was again questioned with regard to his purposes. As he still refused to give an account of himself,<sup>9</sup> the magistrates concluded that he was a spy and<sup>8</sup> gave orders for his immediate execution.

<sup>1</sup>For "who commanded him to disclose," simply say "asking," and translate *identity*, *destination*, etc., by dependent questions. See page 123.

<sup>2</sup>Say, "not having entered (*ingredior*) through the gates."

<sup>3</sup>Say, "by no means terrified."

<sup>4</sup>Use the Relative and place it first, as usual. This will give the connection with the previous sentence.

<sup>5</sup>*Togatus*.

<sup>6</sup>Observe that this is an expression of time, which is a common method of beginning a new sentence.

<sup>7</sup>Does it really mean that he was dragged *before* the authorities?

<sup>8</sup>Get rid of this conjunction according to the principle laid down in Supplementary Exercise V., Note 2.

<sup>9</sup>In consideration of what has gone before, "to give an account of himself" may be rendered simply by *respondere*.

### XIII.

All the Hernicians who were captured in the battle Fabius sent to the senate at Rome. An<sup>1</sup> investigation was held for the purpose of finding out whether they had been compelled to fight against Rome on the side of the Samnites or whether they had done<sup>2</sup> so voluntarily. They were then distributed amongst the Latin states, there<sup>3</sup> to be kept under guard,<sup>4</sup> and instructions were given to the new consuls to refer the whole matter over again to the senate next year. The<sup>5</sup> Hernicians were much aggrieved at this treatment.

<sup>1</sup>Examine carefully the passage from "an investigation" to "next year," and you will find that there are only two important historical facts, namely:



(a) They were distributed amongst the Latin States.

(b) The consuls were ordered to refer the whole matter. Begin, therefore, with "When it had been asked (*quaero*) whether," etc.

<sup>2</sup>This is obviously a mere repetition of the verb *fight*. Rearrange thus, "Whether they had fought against the Romans on the side of (*pro*) the Samnites from compulsion or of their own free will.

<sup>3</sup>Not needed. <sup>4</sup>Gerundive of *custodio*. See page 128, §2.

<sup>5</sup>Begin this sentence as usual with the word that refers you back to the previous one. There is no need to express the word "treatment."

#### XIV.

In the consulship of Cicero and Antony a conspiracy to overthrow the Roman government was set on foot by L. Sergius Catilina, a depraved aristocrat.<sup>1</sup> News of the plot came to Cicero's ears through the wife of one of the conspirators, whereupon he immediately called a meeting of the senate in the temple of Jupiter Stator and laid<sup>2</sup> the whole matter before the house. Catiline in alarm<sup>3</sup> left the city and fled with a few friends to Etruria. He<sup>4</sup> already had a fortified camp at Fæsulæ in charge of C. Manlius, whom he had instructed to send messengers throughout the length and breadth<sup>5</sup> of Italy for the purpose of collecting the old soldiers of Sulla. Meanwhile the senate passed a decree to the effect that the consuls should take precautions to safeguard the state.<sup>6</sup> A few of the conspirators in the city were immediately arrested and the question of their punishment was brought up in the senate.<sup>7</sup> Two opinions were expressed.<sup>8</sup> D. Silanus moved that sentence of death be passed upon the culprits. Caesar proposed in amendment their imprisonment and the confiscation of their property.<sup>9</sup> Observing that the majority<sup>10</sup> seemed to incline to<sup>11</sup> the opinion of Caesar, Cicero, in a speech known as *The Fourth Oration Against Catiline*, made a vigorous defence of the motion of Silanus.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*Homo patricii generis sed ingenio pravo.*

<sup>2</sup>*Ad senatum rem referre.* Make this the main idea with the other clauses subordinate.

<sup>3</sup>"By which thing alarmed" will give connection.

<sup>4</sup>The English takes it for granted that Fæsulæ is in Etruria. Latin would state the fact specifically by saying "there at Fæsulæ."

<sup>5</sup>*Totus* simply.

<sup>6</sup>The usual formula was *ne quid res publica detrimenti capiat*.

<sup>7</sup>It was asked in the Senate what it was pleasing to be done concerning.

<sup>8</sup>*Proponere.*

<sup>9</sup>Better make one sentence from "A few of the conspirators" to "of their property," thus, "A few of the conspirators," etc. (abl. absol.), "when it was asked," etc., "were expressed" (principal verb) "one of Silanus, who thought (*censere*) that they should be condemned to death, the other of Caesar, who thought (*existimare*) that, their goods being confiscated (*publicare*), they should be cast into chains."

<sup>10</sup>*Plures senatores.*

<sup>11</sup>*Inclinare ad.*

<sup>12</sup>Vigorously commended the opinion (*sententiam commendare*) of Silanus in (by means of) a speech, etc.

## XV.

In the course of the same summer, after the recovery<sup>1</sup> of Lesbos, the Athenians, under the command of Nicias, made an expedition<sup>2</sup> against the island of Minoa, which lies near Megara. The<sup>3</sup> Megarians had constructed a fort there, and had turned<sup>4</sup> the island into a military station. Nicias<sup>5</sup> made no attack. His<sup>5</sup> instructions from home<sup>6</sup> were to starve the enemy into a surrender and not<sup>7</sup> to storm the place, the idea<sup>8</sup> being that if some day<sup>9</sup> a treaty of peace were concluded and the Athenians agreed to give up all the places which they had taken by force of arms, the island of Minoa might be excepted on the ground that the Megarians had surrendered it of their own free will.

<sup>1</sup>A common way of rendering an abstract noun is to use the Perfect Participle of a verb, e.g., *ab urbe condita*=from the foundation of the city.

<sup>2</sup>Translate quite simply.

<sup>3</sup>Consider in what relation this sentence stands to the preceding one and insert a connecting word. See page 119.

<sup>4</sup>This may be rendered by using *utor* with *navalia*, but mind the tense.

<sup>5</sup>Show the connection as usual.

<sup>6</sup>Be definite or omit altogether.

<sup>7</sup>Always put *neque* instead of *et non*, and *neve* or *neu* instead of *et ne*.

<sup>8</sup>*Eo consilio ut.*      <sup>9</sup>*Aliquando.*

## XVI.

As soon as Agesilaus found<sup>1</sup> himself appointed to the post of commander-in-chief he advised Sparta to send him into Asia, with a view to making war on the king. In his opinion<sup>2</sup> an offensive<sup>3</sup> war was preferable to a defensive<sup>3</sup> one. A report had gone abroad<sup>4</sup> that Artaxerxes was collecting fleets and land armies and<sup>5</sup> that an invasion of Greece was the object of his preparations. Agesilaus gained his point,<sup>6</sup> and such was his despatch that he arrived in Asia with his troops before the satraps of the king were cognizant of his departure<sup>7</sup> from Greece. The result<sup>8</sup> was an easy victory<sup>7</sup> for the Lacedaemonians.

<sup>1</sup>From "found" to "commander-in-chief" may be rendered by means of *imperium* and *potior*.

<sup>2</sup>At the end of the previous sentence you may put a comma and insert *dicens* or *docens*, or you may put a colon and let the verb of saying be understood.

<sup>3</sup>The idea may be rendered very simply in this passage by saying "it is better (*satius*) to fight in Asia than in Europe."

<sup>4</sup>Use *exire*, and remember to show your connection with the previous sentence.

<sup>5</sup>The Relative and the verb *mittere* in the proper Mood will translate the idea in this last clause.

<sup>6</sup>*Data potestate* will do.      <sup>7</sup>Use a verb.      <sup>8</sup>*Quo factum est.*



## XVII.

The Epidamnians,<sup>1</sup> finding that it was vain<sup>2</sup> to look to Corcyra for help, were in great perplexity<sup>3</sup> as to their next move<sup>4</sup> at such a crisis.<sup>5</sup> Sending<sup>6</sup> to Delphi, they enquired of the oracle whether they should surrender their city to the original founders<sup>7</sup> of the colony, the Corinthians,<sup>8</sup> and endeavour to obtain some assistance from them. The god replied that they should,<sup>9</sup> and bade<sup>10</sup> them offer the leadership of the combined forces<sup>11</sup> to the Corinthians. In accordance with this command<sup>12</sup> the Epidamnians went to Corinth, informed the Corinthians of the answer which the oracle had given, and delivered up the city to them.<sup>13</sup>

<sup>1</sup>*Epidamnii.*

<sup>2</sup>Say "that no help would be brought to them from the Corcyraeans (*Corcyraei*)."

<sup>3</sup>Use a verb.

<sup>4</sup>Render by means of a dependent question.

<sup>5</sup>*Discrimen.*

<sup>6</sup>The relation of this sentence to the foregoing is one of consequence. Begin therefore with *qua re* or some introductory word or phrase with similar meaning.

<sup>7</sup>*Deduco.*

<sup>8</sup>Better introduce the Corinthians (*Corinthii*) before describing them as founders.

<sup>9</sup>It will be necessary for the Latin to say *what* they should do.

<sup>10</sup>You will not require both "replied" and "bade." The Latin construction will show that a command is being given.

<sup>11</sup>"Of the combined forces" can be understood from the context. Just say "take (*adsumere*) them (the Corinthians) to themselves (as) leaders."

<sup>12</sup>Compare with Note 6 above. Better not have so many co-ordinate clauses in this last sentence.

<sup>13</sup>The student should be asked to rewrite the above, using more complex periods. The first two sentences might be put together with "sent" as the principal verb, or the second sentence might run into the third by making "the god replied" the main sentence. It is always a question just how much complexity to introduce into your Latin sentence. It is safer for the young student to avoid excessive complication and to connect his periods in the manner suggested on page 119.



## XVIII.

For these<sup>1</sup> reasons the Corinthians determined to make common cause<sup>2</sup> with the Epidamnians; accordingly<sup>3</sup> all who would volunteer to settle in Epidamnus were given permission to go and a garrison was sent<sup>4</sup> for their protection. This<sup>1</sup> garrison, which<sup>5</sup> was composed of Ambracian and Leucadian troops, proceeded by land<sup>6</sup> to Appolonia, which was a colony of the Corinthians, fearing<sup>7</sup> to go by sea lest the Corcyraeans should oppose their passage. Great<sup>8</sup> was the annoyance of the Corcyraeans when they discovered that the settlers and the troops had entered Epidamnus and that the colony had been given up to the Corinthians. They<sup>9</sup> immediately set sail with twenty-five ships and laid siege to the town.

<sup>1</sup>This word is sufficient to make the connection with what went before. See page 119.

<sup>2</sup>If you use *coniungere*, remember that it is transitive.

<sup>3</sup>You can begin a new sentence with *itaque*, or you can make the first sentence a *cum*-clause and leave out the word "accordingly."

<sup>4</sup>Better turn into the Active Voice, and this will allow you to keep "Corinthians" for your subject. Get rid of "and" by saying "the permission (*potestas*) of going being given to all who were willing to betake themselves (*se conferre*) thither for the purpose of settling (*habitare*)."

<sup>5</sup>Better shift this clause back to the previous one, and you will then say simply "a garrison of Ambracians and Leucadians."

*Itinere pedestri ire.*

<sup>7</sup>Fearing lest they might be prevented (*prohibeo* with Infinitive) by the Corcyraeans from crossing the sea.

<sup>8</sup>For connection begin "*Corcyraei vero*." See page 119, §5 (h) and §6 (d). Or, if you are going to put a noun for "annoyance," begin "*Corcyraeorum*," etc. "Great was the annoyance," etc., could be rendered by using the phrase *rem iniquo animo ferre*.

<sup>9</sup>To be definite and also to give connection indicate by *eo* the place to which they are sailing. See page 119, §6 (h).

## XIX.

To avoid<sup>1</sup> tiring his soldiers by a lengthy march, exhausted as they were with a long and indecisive<sup>2</sup> battle, Caesar on the next day<sup>3</sup> kept his men within their lines. Meanwhile the enemy, having sent for reinforcements, were waiting for an attack on the part<sup>4</sup> of our men, so that they had no appearance of desiring to fight. After mid-day, seeing that the strength and spirits of his men were now so much restored<sup>5</sup> that they were not likely to shrink<sup>6</sup> from any danger but on the contrary were standing prepared for battle, Caesar threw open<sup>7</sup> two gates, made a sudden sortie, and surprised<sup>8</sup> the enemy, who were taken unawares and never dreamt<sup>9</sup> of such a manoeuvre. Great numbers<sup>10</sup> were surrounded and slain, and so great was the slaughter that barely 500 escaped without being wounded,<sup>11</sup> and had not night intervened, death<sup>12</sup> would have overtaken these as well.

<sup>1</sup>*Ne.*      <sup>2</sup>*Diutinus atque anceps.*

<sup>3</sup>Rearrange the whole sentence with a view to showing the connection with what presumably went before.

<sup>4</sup>Several words and phrases throughout this selection may be omitted altogether.

<sup>5</sup>*Redintegrare.*      <sup>6</sup>*Detrectare.*      <sup>7</sup>*Patefacere.*

<sup>8</sup>"Surprise" in military sense=*opprimere*.

<sup>9</sup>Say, "expecting nothing of that kind" (*eius modi*). See also Note 4, before turning these relative clauses.

<sup>10</sup>*Numerus* is not to be used in the plural in this sense.

<sup>11</sup>*Integer.*

<sup>12</sup>Avoid, if possible, making a *thing* perform an act. See the first note on page 135. Say, "not even these would have survived." For "would have" see the top of page 129. Do not be afraid of *ne . . . quidem* for *not even* in a clause beginning with *ut*.

## XX.

In the following year Q. Fabius fought a pitched<sup>1</sup> battle with the army of the Samnites near the city of Allifae. The Romans had it all their own way.<sup>2</sup>

The enemy were routed and<sup>3</sup> driven into their camp and<sup>4</sup> they would not have kept possession of that,<sup>5</sup> if<sup>6</sup> the daylight had lasted but a little longer. It was invested, however,<sup>7</sup> before nightfall and a watch kept<sup>8</sup> to prevent<sup>9</sup> anyone from slipping out.<sup>10</sup> Next day, at the first glimmering of the dawn,<sup>11</sup> they<sup>12</sup> prepared to surrender. Those who were natives of Samnium agreed to come out if<sup>13</sup> they were allowed a single garment apiece. They<sup>14</sup> were all sent under the yoke. No stipulations were made<sup>15</sup> for the allies of the Samnites and they were sold at auction<sup>16</sup> to the number of seven thousand.

<sup>1</sup>*Justum.*

<sup>2</sup>Say, "The result of the action was not at all (*minime*) doubtful." *Res*=the result of the action.

<sup>3</sup>Do not omit the "and" this time. When you have two participles like these, both agreeing with the same subject, you should connect them by a conjunction.

<sup>4</sup>And . . . not=*neque*.

<sup>5</sup>As there is considerable emphasis on "that," it might be well to repeat *castra*. Latin repeats nouns more frequently than English.

<sup>6</sup>Say, "unless little of the day (*paulum diei*) had remained" (*supersum*).

<sup>7</sup>*Tamen.* <sup>8</sup>Say, "it was guarded" (*custodio*).

<sup>9</sup>*Ne.* <sup>10</sup>*Elabor.*

<sup>11</sup>Say, "the light being scarcely yet (*vixdum*) established" (*certus*).

<sup>12</sup>This is not definite enough for Latin, as "they" have not been specifically mentioned in the previous sentence.

<sup>13</sup>*Cum singulis vestimentis* will do for the whole of this conditional clause.

<sup>14</sup>There are several short sentences here. Better retain them, as you are supposed to be stating a number of historical facts which are all important. This style of using short periods also gives liveliness to the narrative and seems suited to this passage.

<sup>15</sup>Say, "it was provided not at all"—*nihil cautum est*. You should bring out by position the contrast between what was done to the *Samnites* and what to their *allies*. Latin is more rhetorical, more pointed, than English in its use of contrast, balance of words, phrases, etc. See page 119, §6 (e).

<sup>16</sup>*Sub corona venio.*



## XXI.

Such was the manner in which<sup>1</sup> they took up their positions in line of battle, and the hopes of the generals on both sides were high. Neither<sup>2</sup> side had the advantage in point of numbers<sup>3</sup> or in the character<sup>4</sup> of its troops, but there was a very great disparity<sup>5</sup> in the spirit of the soldiers. The<sup>6</sup> Romans, though they were fighting far away from their country, had easily been persuaded<sup>7</sup> by their leaders that<sup>8</sup> it was for Italy and Rome they were fighting. Therefore, feeling that their return home depended on<sup>9</sup> their valour, they had resolved to come off victorious or die in the attempt.<sup>10</sup> The other army was much less resolute. The majority were Spaniards, who preferred defeat in Spain to a compulsory march into Italy as their reward for a victory.<sup>11</sup> And so at the first encounter, almost before<sup>12</sup> the javelins were discharged, the wings retreated, and when the Romans bore down upon their centre with great impetuosity, the whole army fled from the field.

<sup>1</sup>You do not need a relative clause here. Position will give emphasis.

<sup>2</sup>Put in a word to express the relation with the previous sentence.

<sup>3</sup>Not plural in Latin.

<sup>4</sup>*Genus*. <sup>5</sup>Use an adjective.

<sup>6</sup>Insert your connecting word, as suggested in 2 above. See page 119, §5 (a) and (c).

<sup>7</sup>As *persuadeo* governs the Dative you cannot put it in the Passive Voice with "Romans" as the subject. Use it impersonally or turn it into the Active. Will you put an *ut* clause after *persuadeo* or Acc. with Infin.?

<sup>8</sup>"That it was for" is simply the English way of getting emphasis. Without emphasis the clause is "that they were fighting for." The position of the Latin words will give the emphasis on "for Italy and Rome."

<sup>9</sup>Literally "was placed on" (*ponere*).

<sup>10</sup>Simplify all this.

<sup>11</sup>Say, "who preferred (*malo*) to be defeated in Spain than to be dragged (*traho*) victorious into Italy."

<sup>12</sup>Say, "when scarcely."



## GENERAL VOCABULARY.

---

Short vowels and vowels long by position are not marked. Diphthongs are always long. The student should mark the quantities in the special vocabularies for himself.

### A

**a, ab, prep. with abl.** (**a** before consonants; **ab** before vowels and some consonants), from, at a distance of; by; on the side of.

**ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum**, hide.

**abi-ēs, -etis, F., fir.**

**ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum**, throw away.

**absens, -entis**, absent, away, being away.

**absimilis, e**, unlike.

**ab-sistō, ere, -stitī**, keep away.

**absum, abesse, aful**, be absent, be distant.

**ac** (shorter form for **atque**, used only before consonants), and.

**ac-cēdo, ere, -cessī, -cessum**, go to be added.

**acceptus, a, um, adj.**, acceptable.

**ac-cidō, ere, -cidī**, happen, occur.

**ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, receive; hear (*receive by the ear*).

**accūso, āre, āvī, ātum**, accuse.

**ācer, cris, ere**, sharp, shrewd, eager.

**aciēs, ēī, F.**, edge, line, line of battle, battle.

**ācriter, adv.** (**acrius, acerrime**), spiritedly; eagerly; actively.

**actuārius, a, um**, light, swift.

**acūtus, a, um**, sharp, pointed.

**ad, prep. with acc.**, to, towards, for; near; until.

**adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum**, equal.

**ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum**, add.

**ad-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum**, lead, induce.

**adeō, adv.**, so, so much.

**adeō, ire -iī, -itum**, go to, visit, attack.

**adeptus, a, um, from adipiscor.**

**adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum**, call in, bring along.

**adhortor. ārī, ātus sum**, encourage.

**ad-imo, ere, -ēmī, -emptum**, take away, destroy.

**ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum**, obtain, gain.

**aditus, ūs, M.**, approach, access, means of approach.

- ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum**, throw to, against.  
**ad-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum**, join to.  
**ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum**, assist.  
**administrō, āre, āvī, ātum**, execute, manage.  
**ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum**, incur ; commit.  
**admodum, adv.**, very.  
**ad-orior, irī, -ortus sum**, attack.  
**ad-sum, -esse, -fuī**, be near, be present.  
**adolescens, -entis, M.**, young man.  
**adulescentia, ae, F.**, youth.  
**advena, ae, M. and F.**, a stranger.  
**adventus, ūs, M.**, arrival.  
**adversum or adversus, prep. with acc.**, against.  
**adversus, a, um**, opposite, unsuccessful.  
**ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum**, turn towards ; **animus ad-vertō**, observe.  
**advolō, āre, āvī, ātum**, fly to, rush upon.  
**aedēs, is, F.**, (*sing.*) temple ; (*plur.*) house.  
**aedificium, i, N.**, building.  
**aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum**, build, construct, arrange.  
**Aedui, i, M.**, an Aeduan ; *in plur.*, the Aedui, a tribe of Gaul.  
**aegrē, adv.** (aegrius, aegerrime), scarcely, with difficulty.  
**aes, aeris, N**, bronze, copper ; money.  
**aestās, -tātis, F.**, summer.  
**aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum**, estimate ; think.  
**aestus, ūs, M.**, tide.  
**aetās, -tātis, F.**, age, years, time.  
**afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum**, bring, cause.  
**af-ficio, ere, fēcī, -fectum**, visit with ; affect, be troubled.  
**affirmō, āre, āvī, ātum**, assert.  
**afflictō, āre, āvī, ātum**, damage, wreck.  
**afflictus, a, um**, *from affligo*.  
**af-fligo, ere, -flixī, -flictum**, strike down, shatter.  
**Africa, ae, F.**, Africa.  
**Africus, i, M.**, Africus, the south-west wind.  
**ager, agri, M.**, field, land.  
**agger, -eris, M.**, mound, rampart.  
**ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum**, attack.  
**aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum**, attach, join.  
**agmen, -minis, N.**, army on the march ; **primum agmen**, the van ; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.  
**agō, ere, ēgī, actum**, drive ; do, carry on ; thank.  
**agricola, ae, M.**, farmer.  
**alacritās, -tātis, F.**, eagerness.  
**albus, a, um**, white.  
**aliēnus, a, um**, belonging to another ; disadvantageous.

**aliquantus**, a, um, some ; *neut. as subst.*, a considerable part.

**aliquis**, quid, some one, something.

**aliquot**, *adj.*, *indeclinable*, several, some, a few.

**aliter**, *adv.*, otherwise.

**alius**, a, ud, other, another ; different ; **altius** . . . **altius**, one,

. . . another ; **alii** . . . **alii**, some . . . others.

**allātus**, a, um, *from affero*.

**alō**, ere, aluī, altum (alitur), nourish ; maintain ; increase.

**alter**, era, erum, the one, another (*of two*) ; second ; **altor**

. . . alter, the one . . . the other.

**altitūdō**, -dinis, F., depth ; height.

**altus**, a, um, high ; deep.

**ambulō**, āre, āvī, ātum, walk.

**āmentia**, ae, F., madness, folly.

**amicē**, *adv.*, in a friendly manner.

**amicitia**, ae, F., friendship, alliance.

**amicus**, a, um, friendly.

**amicus**, i, M., friend, ally.

**amissus**, a, um, *from amitto*.

**a-mittō**, ere, -mīsī, -missum, lose.

**amplius**, *adv. comparative of amplē*, more, further ; more than.

**ān**, *conj.*, or, introducing the second part of an alternative question.

**an-ceps**, -cipitis, double ; doubtful.

**ancora**, ae, F., anchor.

**angulus**, i, M., corner, angle.

**angustē**, *adv.*, closely.

**angustiae**, arum, F., *plur.*, narrows, straits, narrow pass.

**angustus**, a, um, narrow, steep.

**anima**, ae, F., life.

**animadver-tō**, ere, -tī, -sum, notice, observe, perceive.

**animus**, i, M., soul, mind, heart, spirit, courage.

**annus**, i, M., year

**annuus**, a, um, a year's, for a year.

**ante**, (1) *adv.* before, formerly, (2) *prep. with acc.*, before.

**anteā**, *adv.*, before, previously.

**ante-cēdō**, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go before, precede ; surpass.

**ante-pōnō**, ere, -posuī, -positum, place before, prefer.

**antiquus**, a, um, old, ancient.

**aper-iō**, ire, -uī, -tum, open ; disclose, reveal.

**apertus**, a, um, *adj.*, open, exposed.

**appāreō**, ēre, uī, itum, appear.

**appellō**, āre, āvī, ātum, call ; address.

**ap-pellō**, ere, -pullī, -pulsum, bring to land.

**appeto**, ere, ivī (ii), itum, to seek after eagerly.

**apportō**, āre, āvī, ātum, bring.

- appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum**, approach (*with dat.*).  
**aptus, a, um**, suited, fitted.  
**apud, prep. with acc., at**, among, near, in the presence of ; **at** the house of.  
**aqua, ae, F.**, water.  
**aquātiō, -ōnis, F.**, getting water.  
**aquila, ae, F.**, eagle, standard of a Roman legion.  
**aquilifer, eri, M.**, standard-bearer.  
**āra, ae, F.** altar.  
**Ar-ar, -aris, M.**, the Arar, *a river in Gaul*.  
**arbiter, trī, M.**, arbitrator.  
**arbitrium, i, N.**, will, judgment.  
**arbitror, ārī, ātus sum**, think, judge.  
**arbor, -oris, F.**, tree.  
**arcess-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum**, summon, send for.  
**arduus, a, um**, steep, difficult.  
**argentum, i, N.**, silver.  
**āridus, a, um**, dry ; **N.**, **aridum, i**, *as subst.*, dry land.  
**Ariovistus, ī, M.**, Ariovistus, *a chief of the Germans*.  
**arma, ōrum, N.**, *plur.*, arms.  
**armō, āre, āvī, ātum**, arm, equip ; *perf. part. pass.*, armed.  
**ar-ripio, ere, -ripuī, -reptum**, seize.  
**ars, artis, F.**, art, skill.  
**arx, arcis, F.**, citadel.  
**a-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scensum**, mount, ascend ; go on board.  
**ascensus, ūs, M.**, ascent.  
**aspectus, ūs, M.**, appearance.  
**a-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum**, see.  
**assue-facio, ere, -fēcī, -factum**, accustom, train.  
**at, conj.**, but, but yet.  
**Athēnae, ārum, F.**, *plur.*, Athens.  
**Athēniensis, e, adj.**, Athenian ; *masc. as subst.*, an Athenian.  
**atque, conj.**, and ; *in comparisons*, than, as.  
**at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tactum**, touch ; border on ; reach.  
**attrib-uo, ere, -uī, -ūtum**, assign.  
**auctor, -ōris, M.**, adviser ; an authority ; historian.  
**auctoritās, -tātis, F.**, influence ; power.  
**audācia, ae, F.**, daring.  
**audacter, adv.**, boldly.  
**audeō, ēre, ausus sum**, dare.  
**audiō, īre, īvī, ītum**, hear ; listen to ; hear of.  
**aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātum**, take away, carry off.  
**augeo, ēre, auxī, auctum**, increase, strengthen.  
**aureus, a, um**, of gold, golden.  
**aurum, ī, N.**, gold, money.  
**ausus, a, um**, *from audeo*.



**aut, conj., or ; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.**  
**autem, conj., but ; moreover, now, however.**  
**auxillum, i, N., aid ; in plur., auxiliaries, reinforcements.**  
**āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn aside.**  
**avus, i, M., grandfather.**

## B

**barbarus, a, um, foreign ; uncivilized.**  
**barbarus, i, M., a foreigner, a barbarian.**  
**Belgae, ārum, M., plur., the Belgians, a people of Gaul.**  
**bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.**  
**bello, āre, āvī, ātum, to wage war.**  
**bellum, i, N., war.**  
**bene, adv. of bonus (melius optimē), well.**  
**biduum, i, N., the space of two days.**  
**bis, adv., twice.**  
**bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), good ; N., plur. as subst.,**  
**bona, ōrum, goods, property.**  
**brevis, e, short ; as adv., brevī, in a short time, presently,**  
**quickly.**  
**Britannia, ae, F., Britain.**  
**Britannus, i, M., a Briton.**

## C

**cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall,**  
**caedēs, is, F., slaughter.**  
**caedō, ere, cecidī, caesum, slay.**  
**caelum, i, N., heaven.**  
**caerimōnia, ae, F., reverence.**  
**campus, i, M., field, plain.**  
**capillus, i, M., hair.**  
**capio, ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture.**  
**captīvus, i, M., captive, prisoner.**  
**cap-ut, -itis, N., head, capital ; of a river, mouth.**  
**careō, ēre, uī, itum, be without, be free from, with abl.**  
**carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat.**  
**cārus, a, um, dear ; valuable.**  
**castellum, i, N., fortress, stronghold.**  
**castra, ōrum, N., plur., camp.**  
**cāsus, ūs, M., accident ; emergency ; disaster.**  
**causa, ae, F., cause, reason ; in the abl. sing. with a gen. pre-**  
**ceding, for the sake of, for the purpose of.**  
**cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, retreat ; yield.**  
**celer, eris, ere, rapid, sudden.**  
**celeritās, -tātis, F., rapidity, quickness.**  
**celeriter, adv. (celerius celerrime), quickly.**

- celo, āre, āvī, ātum, hide.  
 cēna, ae, F., dinner.  
 cēnō, āre, āvī, ātum, dine.  
 centēnī, ae, a, a hundred each.  
 centum, a hundred.  
 centurio, ōnis, M., centurion.  
 cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, perceive, see.  
 certāmen, -minis, N., contest, battle.  
 certē, *adv.*, certainly; at least.  
 certus, a, um, certain, sure, fixed; *certiorem facere*, inform.  
 cēteri, ae, a, the others, the rest of.  
 cingō, ere, cinxī, cinctum, surround.  
 circā, *prep. with acc.*, around.  
 circiter, *adv.*, about, nearly.  
 circuitus, ūs, M., circumference.  
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, surround.  
 circum-eō, -īre, -īl, -itum, *or* circuitum, surround; make  
     a tour of.  
 circum-sistō, ere, -stetī, surround, crowd around.  
 circum-stō, stāre, -stetī, stand around, surround.  
 circum-veniō, īre, -vērī, -ventum, surround, outflank.  
 cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of.  
 citerior, ius, *adj. (comparative)*, hither, nearer.  
 citō, *adv. (citius, citissime)*, quickly, swiftly, rapidly.  
 citrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of.  
 cīvis, is, M. *or* F., citizen, fellow-citizen.  
 cīvītās, -tātis, F., state, country.  
 clādēs, is, F., defeat, disaster.  
 clam, *adv.*, secretly.  
 clamō, āre, āvī, ātum, cry, call out.  
 clāmor, -ōris, M., shouting, outcry.  
 clārus, a, um, celebrated.  
 classis, is, F., fleet.  
 claudo, ere, clausī, clausum, close; hem in.  
 coactus, a, um, *from* cogō.  
 coēgi, *from* cogō.  
 coepī, isse, begin, began.  
 coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, restrain, check.  
 cognōmen, -minis, N., surname, family name.  
 co-gnoscō, ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum, perceive, learn, discover.  
 cogō, ere, coēgī, coactum, collect; compel.  
 co-hors, -hortis, F., cohort, *division of the Roman army*.  
 cohortatio, -ōnis, F., encouragement, harangue.  
 cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage.  
 collaudō, āre, āvī, ātum, praise, commend highly.  
 collēga, ae, M., colleague.

- col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, lectum, collect.**  
**collis, is, M., hill.**  
**collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, place ; arrange.**  
**colloquium, i, N., conference, interview.**  
**col-loquor, ī, -locūtus sum, converse, discuss.**  
**colō, ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate ; cherish, venerate, esteem.**  
**commeātus, ūs, M., supplies ; passage.**  
**commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum, mention, relate, state, tell.**  
**commendō, āre, āvī, ātum, commend, entrust.**  
**com-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, do ; engage, entrust.**  
**commodē, adv., easily, to advantage ; effectively.**  
**commodus, a, um, suitable ; neut. as subst., commodum, i, advantage.**  
**commoror, āri, ātus sum, delay, wait.**  
**com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, alarm, affect, arouse.**  
**communīcō, āre, āvī, ātum, communicate, share ; announce.**  
**commūniō, īre, īvī, itum, fortify.**  
**commūnis, e, common, general, concerted.**  
**commutātiō, -ōnis, F., change.**  
**comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, procure ; collect ; compare.**  
**com-pellō, ere, -pullī, -pulsum, drive, gather.**  
**com-periō, īre, -peri, -pertum, learn, hear of.**  
**compl-eō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill ; man.**  
**complūres, a (gen., ium), several, many, a great many.**  
**comportō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring in, collect.**  
**compre-hendō, ere, -hendī, -hensum, seize, capture.**  
**con-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, grant, allow ; yield.**  
**con-cīdo, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down, slay.**  
**conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum, win over, make friendly ; gain.**  
**concilium, i, N., assembly, council.**  
**conciō, āre, āvī, ātum, rouse ; urge on.**  
**con-currō, ere, -curri (-eucurri), -cursum, flock ; meet, join battle.**  
**concursum, ūs, M., running together ; collision ; attack.**  
**condicio, -onis, F., terms, agreement.**  
**con-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, found.**  
**condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, overlook.**  
**con-ferciō, īre, -fersi, -fertum, pack closely ; perf. part. pass., confertus, a, um, crowded.**  
**conferō, conferre, contulī, collātum, collect, convey ; compare ; with culpam, lay, put.**  
**confestim, adv., immediately, at once.**  
**con-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, finish, accomplish ; spend.**  
**con-fidō, ere, -fisi sum, trust ; be confident.**  
**confirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, establish ; declare ; encourage.**  
**confisus, a, um, from confido.**

- con-fligō, ere, -fixī, -flictum**, contend, fight.  
**confluens, -entis, M.**, confluence.  
**con-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -flee**, take refuge.  
**con-gerō, ere, -gessī, -gestum**, collect.  
**con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum**, meet; fight.  
**con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum**, throw, throw together; **con-**  
**con-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum**, join. [jecture.  
**con-junx, -jugis, F.**, wife.  
**conjūratiō, -ōnis, F.**, conspiracy, league.  
**conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum**, swear together, form a league.  
**cōnor, āri, ātus sum**, try, undertake.  
**con-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scensum**, mount; embark.  
**consciseo, ere, scīvī, scitum**, to decree a thing in common,  
*with sibi mortem* = to commit suicide.  
**con-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum**, enlist; **patres con-**  
**scripti**, senators.  
**consector, āri, ātus sum**, follow up.  
**con-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum**, follow; overtake; obtain;  
 accomplish.  
**con-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum**, join; **manum conserere**, join  
 battle.  
**conservō, āre, āvī, ātum**, save; preserve.  
**con-sīdo, ere, -sēdī, -sessum**, sit down; take up a position.  
**consilium, ī, N.**, plan, intention; discretion; counsel.  
**constimilis, e**, very similar, like.  
**con-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitutum**, take up position; halt.  
**consōlor, āri, ātus sum**, console.  
**conspēctus, ūs, M.**, sight, view.  
**con-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum**, see.  
**conspicor, āri, ātus sum**, catch sight of, see.  
**conspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum**, combine, conspire.  
**constanter (constantius, constantissime)**, *adv.*, steadfastly,  
 uniformly.  
**constantia, ae, F.**, firmness.  
**constiti, from consisto.**  
**constit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum**, arrange; resolve; station.  
**constat, impers**, it is agreed.  
**con-suēscō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum**, become accustomed; *in perf.*  
*tenses*, am accustomed.  
**consuētūdō, -dinis, F.**, custom.  
**consul, -sulis, M.**, consul.  
**consul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum**, consult; provide for, *with dat.*  
**consultō, āre, āvī, ātum**, deliberate, take counsel.  
**consultō, adv.**, purposely.  
**consultum, ī, N.**, decree.  
**con-sūmō, ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum**, spend, exhaust.



- con-temnō, ere, -tempſi, -temptum, despise.**  
**conten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, hasten ; strive ; assert.**  
**contentiō, -ōnis, F., contest.**  
**contestor, ārī, ātus sum, invoke.**  
**continens, -entis, F., mainland, continent.**  
**con-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, restrain, keep ; bound ; pres.**  
*part. as adj., continens, -entis, continuous.*  
**continuus, a, um, successive.**  
**centio, -ōnis, F., assembly.**  
**contrā, (1) adv., on the contrary ; contra atque, otherwise than. (2) prep. with acc., opposite, against.**  
**con-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, collect, reduce**  
**contrōversia, ae, F., attack, lawsuit, quarrel.**  
**con-veniō. Ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come together ; be agreed on.**  
**convenit, impersonal, it is agreed.**  
**conventus, ūs, M., meeting ; assizes.**  
**conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn, change.**  
**convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call together.**  
**co-orior, īrī, -ortus sum, arise.**  
**cōpia, ae, F., abundance, quantity ; in plur., stores ; troops.**  
**cōram, adv., face to face.**  
**cornu, ūs, N., horn ; wing (of an army).**  
**corpus, -oris, N., body, person.**  
**cor-rumpō, ere, rūpī, -ruptum, bribe, win over, destroy.**  
**cōrus, I, M., the north-west wind.**  
**cotidiānus, a, um, daily.**  
**cotidiē, adv., daily, every day.**  
**crēber, bra, brum, frequent, many.**  
**crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, entrust ; believe, trust (with dat.) ; think.**  
**creō, āre, āvī, ātum, choose, elect.**  
**crīmen, -minis, N., charge, accusation.**  
**cruciātus, ūs, M., torture, cruelty.**  
**crūdēlis, e, cruel, barbarous.**  
**culpa, ae, F., blame, fault.**  
**cultus, ūs, M., civilization.**  
**cum, prep. with abl., with.**  
**cum, conj., when, whenever ; since ; although ; cum primum, as soon as ; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.**  
**cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, hesitate.**  
**cunctus, a, um, all.**  
**cupidē, adv., eagerly.**  
**cupiditās, -tātis, F., eagerness, fondness.**  
**cupidus, a, um, eager, ambitious.**  
**cup-io, ere, -ivī, -itum, be eager, desire earnestly.**  
**cūr, adv., why.**

cūra, ae, F., care.

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, attend to, take care.

currus, us, M., chariot.

cursus, ūs, M., running, speed ; course, passage.

custōdia, ae, F., guard.

custōdio, īre, īvī (īī), ītum, guard, watch.

custōs, tōdis, M., guard, sentry.

## D

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, condemn.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from ; of ; concerning.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, owe ; *with infin.*, ought.

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, determine, decree.

decerto, āre, āvī, ātum, to fight hard.

decimus, a, um, tenth.

dēclivis, e, sloping.

dē-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, run down.

dēdecus, -oris, N., disgrace, reproach.

dediticius, ī, M., one who has surrendered.

dēditio, ōnis, F., surrender.

dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, surrender ; devote.

dē-ducō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead off ; launch ; marry ; conduct.

dēfectio, -ōnis, F., revolt.

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fensum, defend, protect.

dēfero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry, bring ; report.

dēfessus, a, um, *perf. part. of defetiscor*, exhausted.

dē-fetiscor, ī, fessus sum, become exhausted.

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, be wanting, revolt.

dē-fligō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, fix, set.

dēformis, e, ill-shaped, unshapely.

deinceps, *adv.*, in turn.

deinde, *adv.*, then, thereupon, thereafter, next.

dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, jectum, throw down.

dēlectus, ūs, M., levy.

dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy.

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, fasten.

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lectum, choose, levy.

dēmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.

dē-metō, ere, -messuī, -messum, cut down, reap.

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *intrans.*, remove, withdraw.

dēmonstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, point out, mention.

densus, a, um, dense, thick.

dē-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, lay down ; place ; give up.

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *trans.*, remove, carry

dēpositus, a, um, *from dēponō*.

dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, petition against.

- dē-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scensum, descend.  
 dēser-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, desert.  
 dēsīderō, āre, āvī, ātum, desire ; lose.  
 dē-siliō, īre, -siluī, -sultum, leap down.  
 dē-sinō, ere, siī (sivī), -situm, cease.  
 dē-sistō, ere, -stitī, -stitum, cease.  
 desperō, āre, āvī, ātum, despair of.  
 destiti, *from* desisto.  
 dēsum, deesse, deful, be wanting.  
 dēterreō, ēre, uī, itum, deter.  
 dētineō, ēre, uī, detentum, detain.  
 dētrimentum, I., N., loss, defeat.  
 dēvoveō, ēre, vōvī, vōtum, devote oneself to, pledge oneself to.  
 dexter, tra, trum, right ; *fem.*, dextra, *as subst. (sc. manus)*,  
 right hand ; pledge.  
 Diāna, ae, F., Diana.  
 differō, differre, distulī, dilātum, defer ; differ.  
 difficilis, e, difficult.  
 difficultās, -tātis, F., difficulty.  
 dif-fuglō, ere, fūgī, flee, vanish, disappear.  
 dignitās, -tātis, F., respect ; dignity.  
 dignus, a, um, worthy (*with abl.*).  
 diligēter, *adv.*, carefully.  
 diligētia, ae, F., care ; diligence.  
 dī-ligō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, love, esteem.  
 dīmicō, āre, āvī, ātum, fight.  
 dī-mittō, ere, -mīsi, -missum, despatch ; send away ; let go  
 away.  
 dis-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go away.  
 discessus, ūs, M., departure.  
 disciplina, ae, F., training, discipline.  
 discō, ere, didici, learn.  
 di-spergō, ere, -spersi, -spersum, scatter, separate.  
 dis-pliceō, ēre, -plicui, -plicitum, displease (*with dat.*).  
 dis-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place at intervals, station.  
 dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātum, conceal.  
 dis-solvo, ere, -solvi, -solūtum, destroy.  
 dis-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, keep apart.  
 distrib-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, assign, distribute.  
 ditissimus, a, um (*superlative of dives*), richest.  
 diū, *adv.* (diutius, diutissime), long, for a long time.  
 dī-vidō, ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, divide, separate.  
 dīvitiae, ārum, F., *plur.*, riches, wealth.  
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, give ; operam, dare, take pains.  
 doc-eō, ēre, -ui, -tum, teach, inform.  
 dolor, -ōris, M., grief ; resentment.

**dolus**, I, M., deceit ; craft ; strategy.  
**domesticus**, a, um, at home, private ; *with bellum*, civil.  
**dom-ō**, āre, -uī, -itum, subdue.  
**domus**, ūs, F., house, home ; **domi**, locative, at home.  
**dōnec**, *conj.*, so long as, while.  
**dōnō**, āre, āvī, ātum, present.  
**dōnum**, I, N., gift.  
**dubitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, doubt, hesitate.  
**dubius**, a, um, doubtful.  
**ducentī**, ae, a, two hundred.  
**dūco**, ere, duxī, ductum, lead ; consider.  
**dulcis**, e, pleasant, agreeable.  
**dum**, *conj.*, while, until.  
**duo**, ae, o, two.  
**duodecim**, twelve.  
**uplicō**, āre, āvī, ātum, double.  
**dūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, endure, remain.  
**dux**, ducis, M., leader, general ; guide.

## E

**ē**, *prep*, *with abl.*, see **ex**.  
**ē-dūcō**, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead out.  
**effēmīno**, āre, āvī, ātum, to make a woman of.  
**efferrō**, ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry away, bury ; lift up, exalt.  
**ef-ficiō**, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, make, construct ; bring about ; complete.  
**ef-fugiō**, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, escape.  
**ef-fundō**, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour out.  
**ēgī**, *from ago*.  
**ē-gredior**, I, -gressus sum, go forth, leave ; disembark.  
**ēgregiē**, *adv.*, excellently.  
**ēgregius**, a, um, exceptional, eminent.  
**ēgressus**, a, um, *from egredior*.  
**ēgressūs**, ūs, M., landing.  
**ē-jiciō**, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, cast out.  
**ē-mitto**, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send out.  
**ēmolesco**, ere, to become soft.  
**enim**, *conj.*, for, now, in fact, indeed.  
**eō**, Ire, īī (Ivī), itum, go, advance.  
**eō**, *adv.*, to that place.  
**eō**, on this account.  
**eōdem**, *adv.*, to the same place.  
**ephippium**, I, N., saddle.  
**epistulā**, ae, F., letter, epistle.  
**equ-es**, -itis, M., horseman ; *in plur.*, cavalry.  
**equester**, tris, tre, belonging to cavalry.



**equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.**

**equus, I, M., horse.**

**ergā, prep. with acc., towards.**

**ergō, adv., therefore, accordingly.**

**ē-ripiō, ere, -ripui, -reptum, snatch away ; rescue.**

**ē-rumpo, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, make a sally.**

**ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., sally.**

**essedārius, I, M., chariot-warrior.**

**essedum, I, N., war-chariot.**

**et, conj., and ; et . . . et, both . . . and.**

**etiam, also ; even ; non solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.**

**etsi, conj., even if, although.**

**ēvā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, make one's way ; escape.**

**ē-veniō, ire, -vênī, -ventum, turn out, happen.**

**ēventus, ūs, M., outcome, fate.**

**ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out.**

**ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, rush out.**

**ex (sometimes e before consonants), prep. with abl., from, out of ; in accordance with.**

**ex-ardescō, ere, -arsī, -arsum, blaze forth ; become enraged.**

**ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go out, leave.**

**excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, rouse.**

**exclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out.**

**ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut off, hinder.**

**excursiō, -ōnis, F., invasion.**

**excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, excuse.**

**exemplum, I, N., example.**

**ex-eō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, go out ; leave.**

**exerceō, ēre, uī, itum, exercise ; work ; arouse.**

**exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., exercise.**

**exercitus, ūs, M., army.**

**ex-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, drive out.**

**exiguitās, tātis, F., scantiness, smallness.**

**exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.**

**existimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think ; estimate.**

**exitus, ūs, M., way out ; conclusion ; issue.**

**expediō, ire, īvī, itum, extricate ; perf. part. pass., expeditus, a, um, as adj., unencumbered, without baggage.**

**expeditiō, -ōnis, F., expedition.**

**ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out ; banish.**

**exper-ior, īrī, -tus sum, try, prove ; experience.**

**explicō, āre, āvī, ātum, set forth ; unfold ; deploy.**

**explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.**

**explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, examine, investigate.**

**ex-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, display ; disembark ; relate**

**exportō, āre, āvī, ātum**, carry off, remove.  
**expugnō, āre, āvī, ātum**, take by storm.  
**expulsus, a, um**, *from expello*.  
**exsiliū, i, N.**, exile.  
**exspectō, āre, āvī, ātum**, await ; wait.  
**ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum**, blot out.  
**extō, āre**, stand out, be above.  
**ex-struō, ere, -struxī, -structum**, raise.  
**exsul, -sulis, M.**, exile.  
**extemplō, adv.**, at once, immediately.  
**extrā, prep. with acc.**, outside of.  
**ex-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum**, draw out ; protract.  
**extrēmus, a, um** (*superlative of exterus, exterior*), farthest, last.

## F

**faber, bri, M.**, workman, engineer.  
**facile, adv.**, easily.  
**facilis, e**, easy.  
**facinus, oris, N.**, deed, crime.  
**faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, pass. fīo, fierī, factus sum**, make, do ; construct ; render ; *certiorem aliquem facere*, inform one ; *in pass.*, be made, become, happen.  
**factum, i, N.**, deed, occurrence.  
**facultās, -tātis, F.**, opportunity, power.  
**fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum**, deceive ; elude.  
**falsus, a, um**, false.  
**fāma, ae, F.**, rumour, néws ; reputation.  
**faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautum**, favour (*with dat.*).  
**fefelli, from fallo**.  
**fêlleiter, adv.**, happily.  
**ferē, adv.**, almost ; about.  
**ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**, bear ; endure ; withstand ; *in pass.*, go.  
**fērox, ōcis**, high-spirited, warlike.  
**ferreus, a, um**, of iron, iron.  
**ferrum, i, N.**, iron ; sword.  
**ferus, a, um**, fierce, savage.  
**fictus, a, um, from fingo**.  
**fidēlis, e**, faithful.  
**fidēs, ēī, F.**, faith ; honour ; fidelity ; protection.  
**figūra, ae**, shape.  
**figō, ere, finxī, fictum**, invent.  
**finiō, Ire, īvī, itum**, end, bound.  
**finis, is, M.**, end, limit ; *in plur.*, borders, territory.  
**finitimus, a, um**, neighbouring.  
**fīō, fierī, factus sum, pass. of facio**, be made, be done ; become.

- firmiter**, *adv.*, firmly, steadily.  
**firmō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, strengthen.  
**firmus**, *a, um*, strong.  
**flamma**, *ae, F.*, flame.  
**flectō**, *ere*, *flexī*, *flexum*, turn, guide.  
**fleō**, *ēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*, weep.  
**flō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, blow.  
**fluctus**, *ūs, M.*, wave.  
**flūmen**, *-minis, N.*, river.  
**fluō**, *ere*, *fluxī*, *fluxum*, flow.  
**foedus**, *-eris, N.*, treaty, league.  
**fore**, *fut. infin. of sum*.  
**forem** = *essem*.  
**forma**, *ae, F.*, shape, form.  
**fors**, *fortis, F.*, chance.  
**forte**, *adv.*, by chance  
**fortis**, *e*, brave.  
**fortiter**, *adv.*, bravely.  
**fortitūdō**, *-dinis, F.*, bravery.  
**fortūna**, *ae, F.*, chance, fortune ; good fortune, lot ; *in plur.*, possessions.  
**fossa**, *ae, F.*, ditch.  
**fragor**, *-ōris, M.*, crash.  
**frangō**, *ere*, *frēgī*, *fractum*, break, shatter ; crush.  
**frāter**, *-tris, M.*, brother.  
**fraus**, *fraudis, F.*, trick.  
**frēgī**, *from frango*.  
**fremitus**, *ūs, M.*, din.  
**frequens**, *-entis*, in large numbers, in crowds.  
**frīgidus**, *a, um*, cold.  
**frīgus**, *-ois*, cold ; frost.  
**frūmentārius**, *a, um*, pertaining to grain ; **res frumentaria**, supply of corn.  
**frūmentor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, forage.  
**frūmentum**, *ī, N.*, grain, corn ; *in plur.*, crops.  
**frustrā**, *adv.*, in vain.  
**fūdī**, *from fundo*.  
**fuga**, *ae, F.*, flight.  
**fugiō**, *ere*, *fūgī*, *fugitum*, flee, escape.  
**fugō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātum*, put to flight, rout.  
**funda**, *ae, F.*, sling.  
**fundō**, *ere*, *fūdi*, *fūsum*, pour, rout, overthrow.  
**fungor**, *ī*, *functus sum*, perform a duty, hold an office, *with abl*.  
**fūnis**, *is, M.*, rope, cable.  
**furor**, *ōris, M.*, madness, fury.  
**fūsus**, *from fundo*.

## G

- gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus sum, rejoice.  
 gaudium, i, N., joy.  
 gener, eri, M., son-in-law.  
 generōsus, a, um, of noble birth.  
 gens, gentis, F., nation.  
 genus, -eris, N., race ; class, kind.  
 gero, ere, gessi, gestum, carry on, wage ; conduct ; *in pass.*,  
     be done, happen.  
 gesta, ōrum, N., *plur.* (*perf. part. pass. of gero, used sub-*  
*stantively*), events, deeds.  
 gladius, i, M., sword.  
 glōria, ae, F., glory, fame.  
 grātia, ae, F., favour ; influence ; kindness ; gratias agere,  
     thank ; *in abl. preceded by gen.*, gratia, for the sake of.  
 grātulor, ari, atus sum, thank.  
 grātus, a, um, pleasing ; acceptable.  
 gravis, e, heavy, severe ; bitter ; weighty.  
 gravitās, -tātis, F., weight ; strength ; dignity.  
 graviter, *adv.*, severely, bitterly.  
 gūbernātor, -ōris, M., pilot, helmsman.

## H

- habeō, ēre, uī, itum, have ; hold ; consider.  
 haereō, ēre, haesi, haesum, stick fast.  
 haud, *adv.*, not.  
 hērēditās, ātis, F., inheritance.  
 hiberna, ōrum, N., *plur.*, winter-quarters.  
 hīc, *adv.*, here, hereupon, now.  
 hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, pass the winter.  
 hiems, hiemis, F., winter, stormy weather.  
 hinc, *adv.*, hence, from this place.  
 hodiē, *adv.*, to-day.  
 hodiernus, a, um, to-day's.  
 hom-ō, -inis, M. and F., man, mankind.  
 honestās, -tātis, F., honour, integrity.  
 honestus, a, um, honourable.  
 honor (*or honos*), -ōris, M., honour ; office.  
 hōra, ae, F., hour.  
 horreō, ēre, uī, tremble at.  
 horridus, a, um, terrible.  
 hortor, āri, ātus sum, encourage, exhort.  
 hosp-es, -itis, M., guest, friend.  
 hospitium, i, N., hospitality, friendship.  
 hostis, is, M., enemy.



**hūc**, *adv.*, to this place.  
**hūmānitās**, -tātis, F., refinement.  
**hūmānus**, a, um, human ; civilized.  
**humī**, *adv.*, on the ground.  
**humilis**, e, low, obscure.  
**humil-itās**, -tātis, F., lowness.

## I

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place.  
**ideirco**, *adv.*, for this reason.  
**Idem**, eadem, idem, the same.  
**idōneus**, a, um, suitable.  
**igitur**, *conj.*, therefore ; then.  
**ignis**, is, M., fire.  
**ignōrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, not know.  
**ignoscō**, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, forgive, *with dative*.  
**ignōtus**, a, um, unknown.  
**illātus**, a, um, *from infero*.  
**immortālis**, e, immortal.  
**impedīmentum**, i, N., hindrance ; *in plur.*, baggage.  
**impediō**, ire, ivī, itum, hinder, check ; *perf. part. pass. as*  
*adj.*, impeditus, a, um, hampered ; impassable.  
**im-pellō**, ere, -pulī, pulsum, push ; incite.  
**imperātor**, -ōris, M., general.  
**imperātum**, i, N., order.  
**imperītus**, a, um, inexperienced, *with gen.*  
**imperium**, i, N., command, supreme power, rule, authority.  
**imperō**, āre, āvī, ātum, demand, command.  
**impetrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, obtain one's request.  
**impetus**, ūs, M., attack, impetuosity.  
**impl-eō**, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill up, complete.  
**importō**, āre, āvī, ātum, bring in, import.  
**imprōvisus**, a, um, unforeseen ; **improviso** or **de improvviso**,  
 unexpectedly.  
**imprūdēns**, -entis, unsuspecting.  
**imprudentia**, ae, F., indiscretion ; ignorance.  
**in**, *prep.*, 1. *with acc.*, into, against ; 2. *with abl.*, in, on ;  
 among ; in the case of.  
**inānis**, e, empty.  
**incendium**, i, N., fire ; burning.  
**in-cendō**, ere, -cendī, -censum, set on fire ; inflame.  
**incertus**, a, um, uncertain, confused.  
**incitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, urge on ; irritate ; *in pass.*, go at full  
 speed.  
**incognitus**, a, um, unknown.  
**incola**, ae, M. & F., inhabitant.

- incol-ō, ere, uī, inhabit, dwell.**  
**incolumis, e, safe, unharmed.**  
**incommodum, i, N., misfortune, loss.**  
**incrēdibilis, e, incredible.**  
**incursiō, -ōnis, F., raid.**  
**incūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, to accuse, blame.**  
**inde, adv., from that place ; then, next.**  
**indiciū, i, N., mark, proof.**  
**in-dīcō, ere, -dixī, dictum, declare, proclaim.**  
**indigena, M. & F., a native.**  
**indigeō, ērē, uī, be in need of, with gen.**  
**indignor, ārī, ātus sum, be indignant.**  
**in-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead into.**  
**indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, favour, with dat.**  
**ind-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, put on.**  
**industria, ae, F., diligence.**  
**indūtiaē, ārum, F., plur., truce.**  
**in-eō, īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, enter upon, begin.**  
**inermis, e, unarmed.**  
**in-ers, ertis, lifeless.**  
**infectus, a, um, not done, unaccomplished.**  
**inferior, ius, comparative of, inferus, a, um, lower.**  
**infero, inferre, intuli, illātum, bring, bring upon.**  
**infinītus, a, um, endless, countless.**  
**infirmitas, -tātis, F., fickleness.**  
**infirmus, a, um, weak.**  
**in-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, flow (into).**  
**infrā, adv., below, farther down.**  
**ingens, -entis, huge, vast.**  
**in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, enter ; enter upon, begin.**  
**inimīcus, a, um, unfriendly ; as subst., inimicus, i, M., enemy.**  
**initium, i, N., beginning, frontier.**  
**in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, put into, inspire.**  
**injūria, ae, F., injury, injustice.**  
**inopia, ae, F., scarcity.**  
**inopinans, -antis, not expecting.**  
**inopinātus, a, um, unexpected.**  
**inquam, inquit, defective, say.**  
**insciens, -entis, not knowing.**  
**inseius, a, um, ignorant.**  
**in-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, pursue.**  
**insidiaē, ārum, F., plur., ambush, stratagem, treachery.**  
**insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, wind in ; with se, work one's way in.**  
**in-sistō, ere, -stitī, stand on ; keep one's footing.**  
**instit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, undertake ; get ready ; levy.**  
**institūtum, i, N., custom.**

**instō, āre, -stitī, press forward.**

**in-struō, ere, -struxī, -structum, draw up ; arrange, build ; equip.**

**insuē-facio, ere, -fēcī, -factum, train.**

**insuētus, a, um, unaccustomed.**

**insula, ae, F., island.**

**integer, gra, grum, unimpaired ; fresh.**

**intel-legō, ere, -lexī, -lectum, understand, perceive.**

**inter, prep. with acc., between, among, during.**

**inter-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, come between.**

**inter-clūdō, ere, -clūsi, -clūsum, cut off.**

**inter-dīcō, ere, -dixī, -dictum, forbid, warn.**

**interdum, sometimes.**

**interea, adv., meanwhile.**

**inter-eō, -īre, īl (īvī), -itum, perish ; be lost.**

**inter-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill.**

**interim, adv., meanwhile.**

**inter-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, stop, discontinue ; postpone ; in pass., elapse, cease.**

**inter-pōno, ere, -posuī, -positum, interpose ; pledge ; in pass., intervene.**

**interpretor, ārl, ātus sum, explain.**

**interrogō, āre, āvī, ātum, ask, question.**

**inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break down.**

**inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, be between ; take part in ; as impersonal verb, interest, it is of importance.**

**intervallum, I, N., interval, distance.**

**intrā, prep. with acc., within.**

**intrō, āre, āvī, ātum, enter.**

**introitus, ūs, M., entrance, approach.**

**in-tueor, ērī, -tuitus sum, look upon, consider.**

**inūsitātus, a, um, unusual, novel.**

**inūtilis, e, useless.**

**invā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, enter ; invado in, attack.**

**in-veniō, īre, -vērī, -ventum, come upon, find.**

**invicem, adv., in turn.**

**invictus, a, um, unconquered.**

**invidia, ae, F., envy, hatred.**

**invītō, āre, āvī, ātum, invite.**

**invītus, a, um, unwillingly.**

**irātus, a, um, angry.**

**irrum-pō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, to break into, rush in.**

**ita, adv., so, thus.**

**itaque, adv., and so ; therefore.**

**item, adv., likewise, also.**

**iter, itineris, N., march, road, journey.**

**iterum, adv., again, a second time.**

## J

**jaceō, ēre, nī, itum, lie.**  
**jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, throw.**  
**jam, adv., now ; already ; with negatives, any more, longer.**  
**jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, order.**  
**jūdicium, ī, N., trial ; judgment.**  
**jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, judge ; consider ; adjudge.**  
**jugum, ī, N., yoke.**  
**jūmentum, ī, N., beast of burden.**  
**jungō, ere, junxī, junctum, join.**  
**jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, swear.**  
**jūs, jūris, N., right, law.**  
**jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, N., oath.**  
**jussū, abl. used as adv., by order.**  
**justitia, ae, F., justice, uprightness.**  
**justus, a, um, just, fair, regular.**  
**juvenis, is, M., youth, soldier.**  
**juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, aid.**  
**juxtā, adv. and prep., close to.**

## L

**labor, ōris, toil, hardship ; endurance ; difficulty.**  
**labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, toil, strive ; be hard pressed.**  
**labrum, ī, N., lip.**  
**lac, lactis, N., milk.**  
**laccess-ō, ere, -īvī, -ītum, harass, attack.**  
**lacus, ūs, M., lake.**  
**languidus, a, um, faint, weak.**  
**latē, adv., widely.**  
**lātītūdo, -dīnis, F., width, extent.**  
**lātus, a, um, wide, extensive.**  
**latus, -eris, N., side.**  
**laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, praise.**  
**laus, laudis, F., praise, credit.**  
**lĕgātīō, -ōnis, F., embassy.**  
**lĕgātus, ī, M., a deputy, hence ambassador ; lieutenant-general.**  
**legiō, -ōnis, F., legion.**  
**legionārius, a, um, legionary.**  
**lĕgitimus, a, um, legal.**  
**legō, ere, lĕgī, lectum, choose ; read.**  
**lĕnis, e, gentle, light.**  
**lĕniter, adv., gently.**  
**lepus, -oris, M., hare.**  
**levis, e, light, trifling.**



**lex, lēgis, F., law.**  
**libenter, adv., gladly.**  
**liber, era, erum, free.**  
**liberāliter, adv., graciously, kindly.**  
**liberē, adv., freely, frankly.**  
**liberī, -ōrum, M., plur., children.**  
**liberō, āre, āvī, ātum, free, release.**  
**libertās, -tātis, F., liberty, independence.**  
**licet, ēre, licuit, it is permitted.**  
**lignum, ī, N., log, wood.**  
**lingua, ae, F., tongue, language.**  
**lis, litis, F., law suit, damages.**  
**littera, ae, F., letter (of the alphabet); in plur., letter, despatch; literature.**  
**litus, -oris, N., shore.**  
**locus, ī, M. (plur., loca, ōrum, N.), place, position, ground, country.**  
**longē, adv., far, long.**  
**longinquus, a, um, distant; long.**  
**longitūdō, -dinis, F., length.**  
**longus, a, um, long; tedious; navis longa, warship, war galley.**  
**loquor, ī, locūtus sum, speak.**  
**lūna, ae, F., moon.**  
**lux, lūcis, F., light; prima luce or orta luce, at daybreak.**

## M

**magis, comparative adv., more, rather.**  
**magistrātus, ūs, M., magistrate; magistracy.**  
**magnitūdō, -dinis, F., greatness; size.**  
**magnopere, adv. (magis, maxima), greatly, earnestly.**  
**magnus, a, um (major, maximus), great; loud.**  
**māior, us, comparative of magnus; greater.**  
**male, adv., badly, wrongly.**  
**maleficium, ī, N., wrong-doing, outrage.**  
**mālo, malle, māluī, prefer, had rather.**  
**malum, ī, N., evil; calamity.**  
**malus, a, um, bad, evil.**  
**mandātum, ī, N., order, instruction.**  
**mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, instruct; betake.**  
**māne, adv., in the morning.**  
**maneō, ēre, mansī, mansum, remain; abide.**  
**manipulus, ī, M., company (of soldiers).**  
**manus, ūs, F., hand; band, force.**  
**mare, is, N., sea.**  
**marītimus, a, um, maritime, naval.**

- māter**, -tris, F., mother.  
**māteria**, ae, F., timber, wood.  
**mātūrē**, *adv.* (*maturius*, *maturrime*), early, soon.  
**mātūrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, hasten.  
**mātūrus**, a, um, early, ripe.  
**maximē**, *superlative adv.*, very greatly, most, especially.  
**maximus**, a, um, *superlative of magnus*.  
**medius**, a, um, middle.  
**mellor**, us, better, *comparative of bonus*.  
**memor**, -oris, mindful, *with gen.*  
**memoria**, ae, F., memory, account ; time.  
**mens**, mentis, F., mind, intellect.  
**mensis**, is, M., month.  
**mentīō**, -ōnis, F., mention.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, M., merchant.  
**mereō**, ēre, uī, itum, deserve, earn.  
**merīdiānus**, a, um, of mid-day.  
**merīdlēs**, ēī, M., mid-day ; the south.  
**meritum**, ī, N., service ; merit.  
**meto**, ere, messuī, messum, reap.  
**metus**, ūs, M., fear.  
**meus**, a, um, my, mine.  
**mīl-es**, -itis, M., soldier.  
**mīlitāris**, e, military.  
**mille**, *indeclinable adj.*, a thousand ; *subst. in plur.*, **milla**,  
     **ium**, N., thousands.  
**minimē**, *adv.*, *superlative of parum*, very little, least.  
**minor**, us, *comparative of parvus*, less, smaller.  
**min-uō**, ere, -uī, -ūtum, lessen.  
**minus**, *adv.*, *comparative of parum*, less ; *sometimes non*, not.  
**mīror**, ārī, ātus sum, wonder, wonder at.  
**mīrus**, a, um, wonderful.  
**miser**, era, erum, wretched.  
**miserīcordia**, ae, F., compassion, pity.  
**mittō**, ere, mīsī, missum, send.  
**mōbillis**, e, changeable, uncertain.  
**mōbilitās**, -tātis, F., mobility.  
**moderor**, ārī, ātus sum, manage, check.  
**modo**, *adv.*, only, but.  
**modus**, ī, M., measure, fashion, manner ; *abl.*, **modo**, in the  
     character (of).  
**moenia**, **ium**, N., *plur.*, walls.  
**mōlīmentum**, ī, N., great exertion.  
**mōlior**, īrī, ītus sum, plan.  
**mollis**, e, easy ; favorable.  
**moneō**, ēre, uī, -itum, warn, advise.

**mons, montis, M.,** mountain.  
**mora, ae, F.,** delay.  
**morior, morī, mortuus sum,** die ; *perf. part. as adj., mortuus,*  
**a, um,** dead.  
**moror, ārī, ātus sum,** delay, wait.  
**mors, mortis, F.,** death.  
**mortuus, a, um,** *from morior.*  
**mōs, mōris, M.,** manner, custom ; *in plur. often* character.  
**mōtus, ūs, M.,** movement ; revolt.  
**moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum,** move ; influence.  
**mox, adv.,** soon, presently.  
**mulier, -eris, F.,** woman.  
**multitudo, -dinis, F.,** great numbers, multitude.  
**multō, āre, āvī, ātum,** punish, fine.  
**multō, adv.,** by far, by much.  
**multus, a, um (plus, plurimus),** much.  
**mūniō, ire, Ivī, itum,** fortify, protect ; construct.  
**mūnitiō, -ōnis, F.,** fortifying ; fortification ; defences.  
**mūnus, -eris, N.,** present, gift.  
**mūrus, i, M.,** wall.  
**mūtō, āre, āvī, ātum,** change, exchange.

## N

**nam, conj.,** for.  
**namque, conj.,** for.  
**nanciscor, ī, nactus sum,** find, meet with.  
**nactus, a, um,** *from nanciscor.*  
**narrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** tell, relate.  
**nascor, I, nātus sum,** be born, be sprung from ; of metals, be  
 found.  
**nātiō, -ōnis, F.,** race, tribe.  
**nātūra, ae, F.,** nature, character.  
**nātus, a, um,** *from nascor.*  
**nauta, ae, M.,** sailor.  
**nāvālis, o, naval.**  
**nāvigātiō, -ōnis, F.,** sailing, voyage.  
**nāvigium, i, N.,** ship.  
**nāvigō, āre, āvī, ātum,** sail.  
**nāvis, is, F.,** ship ; **navis longa,** warship, man-of-war ;  
**navis oneraria,** transport.  
**nē, conj.,** lest, in order that not.  
**nē, adv.,** not ; **ne . . . quidem,** not even.  
**nec, see neque.**  
**necessariō, adv.,** of necessity.  
**necesse, indeclinable adj.,** necessary.  
**necessitās, -tātis, F.,** necessity.  
**necō, āre, āvī, ātum,** kill.

**neg-legō, ere, -lexī, -lectum**, neglect, disregard.  
**negō, âre, âvī, âtum**, deny, say . . . not.  
**negōtium, ī, N.**, business, matter ; trouble.  
**nemo (neminis), M.**, no one, nobody.  
**nequāquam, adv.**, by no means.  
**neque, or sometimes nec** before consonants, *conj.*, and not, nor, neither.  
**neu, conj.**, and not, nor.  
**neuter, tra, trum**, neither.  
**nihil, N., indecl.**, nothing.  
**nilhilum, ī, N.**, nothing ; **nihiilo, abl. as adv.**, none ; **nihiilo minus, nihiilo secius**, nevertheless, none the less.  
**nisi, conj.**, if not, unless, except.  
**nitor, ī, nīsus and nixus sum**, strive, depend upon.  
**nōbillis, e**, noble ; famous.  
**nōbilitās, -tātis, F.**, high birth ; the nobility.  
**noceō, êre, uī, itum**, injure, *with dat.*  
**noctū, abl. as adv.**, by night.  
**nocturnus, a, um**, by night.  
**nōlō, nolle, nōluī**, be unwilling, not want, refuse.  
**nōmen, -minis, N.**, name ; reputation.  
**nōminātim, adv.**, by name.  
**nōn, adv.**, not.  
**nondum, adv.**, not yet.  
**nonnihīl, N., indecl.**, something.  
**nonnullus, a, um**, some.  
**noscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, in perf.**, know.  
**noster, tra, trum**, our ; **M., plur. as subst.**, our forces.  
**nōtus, from nosco**, well-known.  
**nōvī, from nosco**.  
**novitās, -tātis, F.**, novelty.  
**novus, a, um**, new ; **novissimus**, last, rear ; **novae res**, change of government.  
**nox, noctis, F.**, night.  
**nūdus, a, um**, naked, bare.  
**nullus, a, um**, no, none.  
**numerus, ī, M.**, number.  
**numquam or nunquam, adv.**, never.  
**nunc, adv.**, now.  
**nuntiō, âre, âvī, âtum**, announce.  
**nuntius, ī, M.**, messenger ; report.  
**nūtus, ūs, M.**, nod, sign.

## O

**ō, interjection**, oh !  
**ob, prep. with acc.**, on account of.  
**ob-eō, -īre, -īl (ivī), -itum**, meet ; perform.



**ob-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum**, place in the way of, appear ; *pass.* ;  
lie opposite,

**ob-līviscor, ī, -lītus sum**, forget, *with gen.*

**obsecrō, āre, āvī, ātum**, beseech.

**ob-ses, -sidis, M.**, hostage.

**ob-sideō, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum**, besiege ; occupy.

**obsidiō, -ōnis, F.**, siege.

**obstinātē, adv.**, firmly.

**obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātum**, obey, *with dat.*

**ob-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, hold.

**obtuli, from offero.**

**obviam, adv.**, in the way of ; **obviam ire or venire** (*with dat.*),  
go (*or come*) to meet.

**occāsiō, -ōnis, F.**, opportunity.

**occāsus, ūs, M.**, setting.

**oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cāsum**, fall, be slain.

**oc-cidō, ere, -cidī, -cīsum**, slay.

**occultō, āre, āvī, ātum**, hide.

**occupō, āre, āvī, ātum**, seize ; *perf. part. pass.*, **occupatus**,  
**a, um, as adj.**, engaged.

**oc-currō, ere, -currī (-eucurrī), -cursum**, meet, find.

**oculus, ī, M.**, eye.

**odium, ī, N.**, hatred.

**offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum**, present.

**officium, ī, N.**, duty ; allegiance, service.

**omnino, adv.**, altogether ; *with negatives*, at all.

**omnis, e, all, every.**

**onerārius, a, um**, that carries loads ; **navis oneraria**, a trans-  
port.

**onerō, āre, āvī, ātum**, load.

**onus, -eris, N.**, burden ; load.

**opera, ae, F.**, effort ; agency ; **operam dare**, take measure.

**opes, from ops.**

**opīnio, -ōnis, F.**, opinion ; reputation.

**oportet, ēre, oportuit, impersonal verb.**, it behoves, it is neces-  
sary.

**oppidānus, ī, M.**, an inhabitant of a town.

**oppidum, i, N.**, town.

**op-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum**, oppose, place in the way.

**opportūnē, adv.**, opportunely.

**opportūnus, a, um**, fortunate ; suitable.

**op-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum**, overwhelm, crush, surprise.

**oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātum**, attack.

**(ops), opis, F.**, power, aid ; *generally in plur.*, **opes, opum**,  
resources ; forces ; assistance.

**opus, -eris, N.**, work ; fortification.

**opus**, N., *found only in nom. and acc. sing.*, need.

**ōra**, ae, F., coast.

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, F., speech, statement.

**ōrātor**, -ōris, M., speaker, ambassador.

**orbis**, is, F., circle, the world.

**ordior**, īrī, **orsus sum**, begin.

**ordō**, -dinis, M., rank, line.

**orior**, īrī, **ortus sum**, rise, begin ; be born.

**ornō**, āre, āvī, ātum, supply, furnish, equip, prepare.

**ōrō**, āre, āvī, ātum, pray, beg, entreat.

**ortus**, a, um, *from orior*.

**ōs**, ōris, N., mouth ; face.

**os**, ossis, N., bone.

**osten-dō**, ere, -dī, -tum, *or ostensum*, show, display ; point out, declare.

## P

**pābulātor**, -ōris, M., forager.

**pābulator**, āri, ātus sum, forage.

**pāco**, āre, āvī, ātum, subdue.

**paene**, *adv.*, almost, nearly.

**paenitet**, ēre, **paenituit**, *impersonal verb.*, it repents.

**pāgus**, ī, M., district, canton.

**palam**, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

**pal-ūs**, -ūdis, F., swamp.

**pār**, paris, equal.

**parcō**, ere, **pepercī** (**parsi**), **parsum** (*or* **parcitur**), spare,  
*with dat.*

**parens**, -entis, M. and F., parent.

**pāreō**, ēre, -uī, -itum, obey, *with dat.*

**pario**, ere, **peperi**, **partum**, produce ; win.

**parō**, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare.

**pars**, partis, F., part, some.

**partim**, *adv.*, partly.

**partus**, *from pario*.

**parumper**, *adv.*, for a short time.

**parvulus**, a, um, small.

**parvus**, a, um (*minor*, *minimus*), small.

**passim**, *adv.*, in all directions.

**passus**, a, um, *from patior*.

**passus**, ūs, M., pace ; *one thousand paces = Roman mile*.

**pate-faciō**, ere, -fēcī, -factum, open up.

**pate-fiō**, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of patefacio*.

**pateō**, ēre, uī, extend.

**pater**, -tris, M., father ; **patres conscripti**, senators.

**paternus**, a, um, of a father.

**patior**, ī, **passus sum**, suffer, allow.

- patria**, ae, F., native country.  
**paucitās**, -tātis, F., fewness.  
**paucus**, a, um, few, little.  
**paulātim**, *adv.*, gradually.  
**paulisper**, *adv.*, for a short time.  
**paulō**, *adv.*, a little.  
**paulum**, *adv.*, a little.  
**paupertās**, -tātis, F., poverty.  
**pavor**, -ōris, M., fear, panic.  
**pax**, pācis, F., peace.  
**pecūnia**, ae, F., money.  
**pecus**, -oris, N., cattle ; meat.  
**ped-es**, -itis, M., foot-soldier.  
**pedester**, tris, tre, on or by land ; of infantry.  
**peditātus**, ūs, M., infantry.  
**pellis**, is, F., skin.  
**pellō**, ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, defeat ; drive out.  
**pendō**, ere, **pependī**, **pensum**, weigh, pay.  
**penes**, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the hands of.  
**peperī**, *from pario*.  
**pepulī**, *from pello*.  
**per**, *prep. with acc.*, through ; during ; by means of.  
**per-ago**, ere, -ēgī, -actum, complete.  
**percontātiō**, -ōnis, F., inquiry.  
**percontor**, ārī, ātus sum, ask.  
**per-eō**, -īre, -īī (-īvī), -itum, perish, be killed.  
**perequitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, ride about.  
**per-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry, report, bring ; endure.  
**per-ficiō**, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, finish.  
**perfidia**, ae, F., treachery.  
**perfuga**, ae, M., deserter.  
**perfugium**, ī, N., refuge, place of refuge.  
**periculōsus**, a, um, dangerous.  
**periculum**, ī, N., danger, risk ; attempt.  
**perītus**, a, um, skilled, *with gen.*  
**perlātus**, a, um, *from perfero*.  
**per-maneō**, ēre, -mansī, -mansum, continue, remain.  
**per-mittō**, ere, -mīsī, -misum, entrust ; permit.  
**per-moveō**, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move, influence ; alarm.  
**perpaucus**, a, um, very little, very few.  
**perpetuus**, a, um, lasting ; **in perpetuum**, for ever.  
**per-rumpō**, ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through.  
**per-sequor**, ī, -secūtus, sum, pursue ; attack.  
**perseverō**, āre, āvī, ātum, persist.  
**per-spicio**, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see, observe ; ascertain.  
**per-suadeō**, ēre, -suasī, -suasum, persuade, *with dat.*

- perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, terrify.  
 pertinācia, ae, F., obstinacy.  
 per-tineō, ēre, -tinui, extend, tend.  
 pertulī, *from* perfero.  
 perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., alarm.  
 perturbō, āre, āvī, -ātum, thrown into confusion.  
 per-veniō, īre, -vênī, -ventum, come.  
 pes, pedis, M., foot.  
 pet-ō, ēre, īvī (-īī), -Itum, ask ; seek ; aim at.  
 pīlum, I, N., javelin.  
 piscis, is, M., fish.  
 placeō, ēre, uī, itum, please.  
 plānus, a, um, level.  
 plebs *and* plēbēs, plēbis, F., plebs, the common people.  
 plēnus, a, um, full.  
 plērīque, pleraque, pleraque, the most, most people.  
 plērūmque, *adv.*, generally.  
 plūrimum, *adv.*, *superlative of multum*, most, very much.  
 plūrimus, a, um, *superlative of multus*, most, very much.  
 plūs, pluris, *comparative of multus*, more.  
 poena, ae, F., penalty, punishment.  
 polliceor, êrī, itus sum, promise.  
 pondus, -eris, N., weight.  
 pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, place ; *with arma*, lay down.  
 pons, pontis, M., bridge.  
 poposcī, *from* posco.  
 populor, ārī, ātūs sum, devastate.  
 populus, i, M., people, nation.  
 porta, ae, F., gate.  
 portō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry.  
 portus, ūs, M., harbour.  
 posco, ere, poposcī, demand.  
 pos-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, seize.  
 possum, posse, potuī, be able ; be powerful.  
 post, (1) *adv.*, afterwards, after. (2) *prep. with acc.*, after, behind.  
 posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.  
 posterus, a, um, next, subsequent.  
 post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, set aside.  
 postquam (*often written post . . . quam*), *conj.*, after.  
 postrīdiē, *adv.*, next day.  
 postulātum, ī, N., demand.  
 postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, demand.  
 potens, -entis, powerful.  
 potentia, ae, F., power.  
 potestās, -tātis, F., power ; permission.



- potissimum**, *adv.*, especially, chiefly.  
**potius**, *adv.*, rather, more.  
**potul**, *from* possum.  
**praebeō**, ēre, uī, itum, show ; supply.  
**prae-ceps**, -cipitis, headlong ; steep.  
**praeceptum**, ī, N., instruction.  
**prae-cipiō**, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, instruct.  
**praecipitō**, āre, āvī, ātum, throw, hurl.  
**praecipuē**, *adv.*, especially, particularly.  
**praeclārus**, a, um, noble, famous.  
**praedor**, ārī, ātus sum, plunder.  
**praefectus**, ī, M., officer (*especially of cavalry*).  
**prae-ficiō**, ere, -fēcī, fectum, place in command of, *with acc. and dat.*  
**prae figō**, ere, -fixī, fixum, fix in front, advance.  
**prae-mittō**, ere, -mīsī, -misum, send in advance.  
**praemium**, ī, N., reward.  
**praeparō**, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare beforehand.  
**praesertim**, *adv.*, especially, particularly.  
**praesidium**, ī, N., guard, garrison.  
**prae-stō**, āre, -stitī, -stātūm, or -stitum, show, do ; excel ; fulfil ; *praestat*, *impersonal*, it is better.  
**prae-sum**, -esse, -fuī, be at head of, *with dat.*  
**praeter**, *prep. with acc.*, except ; beyond.  
**praetereā**, *adv.*, besides.  
**praeter-mittō**, ere, -mīsī, -misum, let pass by.  
**preces**, um, F. (*sing. rare*), prayers.  
**precor**, ārī, ātus sum, pray.  
**premō**, ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard.  
**prīdiē**, *adv.*, the day before.  
**primipilus**, ī, M., chief centurion.  
**prīmo**, *adv.*, at first.  
**primum**, *adv.*, first, in the first place ; *cum* or *ubi primum*, as soon as ; *quam primum*, as soon as possible.  
**prīmus**, a, um, *superlative* of prior, first ; *in primis*, *especi-*  
*ally.*  
**princeps**, -cipis, chief ; M., *as subst.*, leader.  
**prīncipātus**, ūs, M., leadership.  
**prior**, ius, comparative, former.  
**priscus**, a, um, ancient.  
**pristinus**, a, um, former.  
**prīus**, comparative *adv.*, earlier, sooner.  
**prīusquam** (*often written prius . . . quam*), *conj.*, before.  
**prīvātīm**, *adv.*, privately.  
**prīvātus**, a, um, private.  
**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of ; on behalf of.  
**pro-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go forward.

**procul**, *adv.*, at a distance.

**prôcûro**, *âre*, *âvī*, *âtum*, to take care of in place of another,  
**prôditîo**, *-ônīs*, *F.*, treason. [to look after.]

**prôditor**, *-ôris*, *M.*, traitor.

**prô-dô**, *ere*, *-didī*, *-ditum*, betray ; hand down.

**prô-dûcô**, *ere*, *-duxī*, *-ductum*, lead forth ; prolong ; entice.

**proelior**, *ârī*, *âtus sum*, fight.

**proelium**, *i*, *N.*, battle.

**profectîo**, *-ônīs*, *F.*, departure.

**profectus**, *a*, *um*, *from proficiscor*.

**prôfectus**, *a*, *um*, *from prôficio*.

**professus**, *a*, *um*, *from profiteor*.

**prôficiô**, *ere*, *-fêcī*, *-fectum*, effect, accomplish.

**pro-ficiscor**, *i*, *-fectus sum*, set out.

**pro-fiteor**, *êrī*, *-fessus sum*, confess ; state.

**pro-gredior**, *i*, *-gressus sum*, go forward.

**prohibeô**, *êre*, *uī*, *itum*, restrain, prevent ; protect.

**prô-jiciô**, *êre*, *-jêcī*, *-jectum*, throw down, throw.

**pro-mittô**, *ere*, *-mīsī*, *-missum*, promise ; **promissus**, *a*, *um*,  
 long.

**prômoveo**, *êre*, *môvī*, *môtum*, move forward.

**promptus**, *a*, *um*, ready, quick.

**prope**, *adv.* (*propius*, *proxime*), near ; nearly ; *as prep. with*  
*acc.*, near.

**prô-pellô**, *ere*, *-pullī*, *-pulsum*, dislodge.

**properô**, *âre*, *âvī*, *âtum*, hasten.

**propinquitâs**, *-tâtis*, *F.*, nearness, proximity.

**propinquus**, *a*, *um*, near, neighbouring ; *M.*, *as subst.*, relative.

**propior**, *ius*, *comparative*, nearer ; *see proximus*.

**propius**, *adv.*, *comparative of prope*, nearer.

**propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.

**propterea**, *adv.*, on this account ; **propterea quod**, because.

**prô-sequor**, *i*, *-secûtus sum*, accompany ; pursue.

**prospectus**, *ûs*, *M.*, sight.

**pro-spiciô**, *ere*, *-spexī*, *-spectum*, look out ; take care.

**protêgô**, *ere*, *xī*, *ctum*, protect.

**prô-vehô**, *ere*, *-vexī*, *-vectum*, carry forward.

**prô-videô**, *êre*, *-vidī*, *-vīsum*, provide, procure ; take precau-

**prôvincia**, *ae*, *F.*, province. [tions.]

**proximus**, *a*, *um*, nearest, next.

**prûdentia**, *ae*, *F.*, discretion, sagacity.

**publicê**, *adv.*, officially, as a state, at the public expense.

**publicô**, *âre*, *âvī*, *âtum*, confiscate.

**publicus**, *a*, *um*, of the state, public ; **res publica**, state.

**puella**, *ae*, *F.*, girl.

**puer**, *erī*, *M.*, boy ; servant.

**pulsus, a, um, from pello.**  
**pulv-is, -eris, M., dust.**  
**puppis, is, F., stern of a vessel.**  
**purgō, āre, āvī, ātum, excuse, clear.**  
**putō, āre, āvī, ātum, think.**

## Q

**quā, adv., where, by which route.**  
**quācumque, adv., wherever.**  
**quaerō, ere, quaesivī (-īl), quaesitum, ask ; seek.**  
**quaestor, -ōris, M., quaestor, paymaster.**  
**quam, adv., as ; how ; after comparatives, than ; with superlatives, as . . . as possible.**  
**quamobrem, adv., wherefore.**  
**quantus, a, um, how great, how much ; (as great) as, (as much) quārē, adv., wherefore. [as.]**  
**quartus, a, um, fourth.**  
**quasi, conj., as if.**  
**-que, enclitic conj., and.**  
**queror, ī, questus sum ; complain.**  
**quīa, conj., because.**  
**quicquam, from quisquam.**  
**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever, quid, N. of quis, as adv., why. [whichever.]**  
**quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, a certain.**  
**quīdem, adv., certainly, indeed ; however ; ne . . . quidem, quīn, conj., but that. [not even.]**  
**quīn, adv., nay, in fact.**  
**quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, interrogative pron. (-nam adding emphasis), who, which, what.**  
**quisquam, quidquam or quicquam, anyone, anything.**  
**quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, each ; every.**  
**quō, adv., 1 rel., whither, where. 2. interrog., where, whither.**  
**quō, abl. of quī, conj., that, in order that ; because.**  
**quoad, conj., until, as long as.**  
**quod, conj., because ; with adverbial force, wherefore.**  
**quōminus, or quo minus, conj., by which the less, so that not.**  
**quondam, adv., once.**  
**quoniam, conj., since, seeing that.**  
**quoque, conj., also, too.**  
**quot, indecl. adj., how many, as many as.**  
**quotannis, adv., annually.**

## R

**rāmus, ī, M., branch.**  
**rapiditās, -tātis, F., swiftmess.**  
**rārus, a, um, scattered ; in plur., in small parties.**

- ratiō, -ōnis, F., method, science ; manner, plan ; reason ;  
 ratus, a, um, *from* reor. [strategy.  
 rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war.  
 recens, -entis, new, recent ; fresh.  
 receptus, ūs, M., retreat.  
 re-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, get back ; welcome.  
 recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, refuse ; reject.  
 red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give back ; render.  
 redēgī, *from* redigo.  
 red-eō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, come back, return.  
 red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, reduce.  
 reditus, ūs, M., return, returning.  
 re-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead back.  
 referō, referre, rettuli, relātum, bring back ; report.  
 re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, repair ; recruit.  
 re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, escape.  
 regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district.  
 rēgius, a, um, royal.  
 regnō, āre, āvī, ātum, be king, reign.  
 regnum, ī, N., kingdom ; supreme power.  
 rego, ere, rexi, rectum, rule.  
 rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, drive back.  
 relātus, a, um, *from* refero.  
 relletus, a, um, *from* relinquo.  
 religiō, -ōnis, F., religious scruple, reverence.  
 re-liquō, ere, -liquī, -lictum, leave behind ; abandon.  
 reliquus, a, um, remaining ; future.  
 re-maneō, ēre, -mansī, -mansum, remain behind.  
 remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, move back, return.  
 re-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send back ; relax.  
 remollescō, ere, become enervated.  
 re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move back, draw away ;  
 rēmus, ī, M., oar. [remove, destroy.  
 renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, renew.  
 renuntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, report.  
 reor, rēri, ratus sum, think.  
 reparō, āre, āvī, ātum, build again.  
 re-pellō, ere, reppulī (*or* repulī), -pulsum, drive back,  
 repente, *adv.*, suddenly. [defeat.  
 repentīnus, a, um, sudden.  
 re-periō, īre, repperī (*or* reperī), -pertum, find, discover.  
 reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry back.  
 repperī, *from* reperio.  
 re-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, restrain, check.  
 repulsus, a, um, *from* repello.  
 rēs, rēi, F., thing, fact, deed, property.



**re-scindō, ere, -scidī, -scissum**, break down.  
**re-sisto, ere, -stitī, halt** ; resist, *with dat.*  
**re-spondeō, ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum**, answer.  
**rēs publica, f., state.**  
**respuo, ere, uī, to spit back**, disdain, reject.  
**restiti, from resisto.**  
**restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum**, restore ; rebuild.  
**re-tineō, ēre, -tīnuī, -tentum**, detain, keep.  
**re-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum**, bring back.  
**rettulī, from refero.**  
**re-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum**, turn back, return.  
**re-vertor, i, -versus sum**, return, *intr. vb.*  
**revocō, āre, āvī, ātum**, recall.  
**rex, rēgis, M., king.**  
**rīdeō, ēre, rīsī, rīsum**, laugh.  
**ripa, ae, f., bank.**  
**rīsus, ūs, M., laughter.**  
**rogō, āre, āvī, ātum**, ask.  
**Rōma, ae, f., Rome.**  
**Rōmānus, a, um, Roman** ; *as subst., a Roman.*  
**rūmor, -ōris, M., rumour.**  
**rumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum**, break.  
**rursus, adv., again, in turn.**

## S

**sacer, cra, crum**, sacred ; *n. plur. sacra orum, as subst.,*  
**sacrificium, i, N., sacrifice.** [sacred rites.  
**sacrificō, āre, āvī, ātum**, sacrifice.  
**saepe, adv. (saepius, saepissime), often.**  
**saepio, īre, saepsī, saeptum**, hedge in.  
**sagitta, ae, f., arrow.**  
**saltus, ūs, M., a passage through mountains or forests.**  
**salus, -ūtis, f., safety.**  
**salvus, a, um, safe.**  
**sānus, a, um, sound, sane** ; **pro sano**, prudently.  
**sapiens, -entis, wise.**  
**satis, enough ; quite.**  
**satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum**, make amends.  
**saucius, a, um, wounded.**  
**saxum, i, N., rock.**  
**scapha, ae, f., small boat.**  
**scientia, ae, f., knowledge.**  
**scindō, ere, scidī, scissum**, tear down.  
**sciō, īre, ivī, itum**, know.  
**scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptum**, write.  
**scūtum, i, N., shield.**

**sē**, *from sui*.

**sēcūs**, *from secus*.

**secundus**, **a**, **um**, second ; favourable.

**secus**, *adv.* (*comparative, secius*), otherwise ; **nihilo secius**,

**secūtus**, **a**, **um**, *from sequor*.

[nevertheless.

**sed**, *conj.*, but.

**sēdes**, **is**, **F.**, seat ; settlement.

**sē-jungō**, **ere**, **-junxī**, **-junctum**, separate.

**sēmita**, **ae**, **F.**, path, lane.

**semper**, *adv.*, always.

**senātus**, **ūs**, **M.**, senate ; audience.

**senectus**, **-tūtis**, **F.**, old age.

**senex**, **senis**, **M.**, old man.

**sententia**, **ae**, **F.**, opinion ; decision.

**sentiō**, **ire**, **sensī**, **sensum**, feel, perceive.

**sepeliō**, **ire**, **ivī** (**ii**), **sepultum**, bury.

**sepultus**, **a**, **um**, *from sepelio*.

**sequor**, **I**, **secūtus sum**, follow, accompany.

**sermō**, **-ōnis**, **M.**, conversation ; language.

**serō**, **ere**, **sēvī**, **satum**, sow.

**serviō**, **ire**, **ivī** (*or ii*), **Itum**, be a slave to ; devote one's self

**servitus**, **-tūtis**, **F.**, slavery.

[to ; *with dat.*

**servō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, save ; watch.

**servus**, **I**, **M.**, slave.

**sēsē**, *from sui*.

**seu**, *see sive*.

**sēvocō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, call aside.

**sī**, *conj.*, if.

**sibi**, *from suī*.

**sic**, *adv.*, thus ; in such a way.

**siccitās**, **-tātis**, **F.**, dryness.

**significō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, indicate ; signify.

**signum**, **I**, **N.**, signal ; standard.

**silentium**, **i**, **N.**, silence.

**silvestris**, **e**, wooded.

**similis**, **e**, like, similar.

**simul**, *adv.*, at the same time ; **simul atque**, *or simul alone*,

**simulō**, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, pretend.

[as soon as.

**sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without.

**singillātīm**, *adv.*, singly, one by one.

**singulāris**, **e**, extraordinary ; *in plur.*, one by one, in scattered

**singulī**, **ae**, **a**, one each, one by one.

[groups.

**sinister**, **tra**, **trum**, left.

**sīnō**, **ere**, **sīvī**, **situm**, allow.

**situs**, **a**, **um**, situated.

**sive or seu**, *conj.*, or if ; **sive . . . sive**, whether . . . or.

- socer, eri, M.,** father-in-law.  
**societas, -tatis, F.,** alliance.  
**socius, i, M.,** ally.  
**sōl, sōlis, M.,** sun.  
**soleō, ēre, solitus sum,** be accustomed.  
**solitūdō, -dinis, F.,** solitude.  
**sollcitō, āre, āvī, ātum,** stir up, bribe.  
**solum, adv.,** only.  
**solus, a, um,** alone, only.  
**solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum,** loose, free ; *with or without naves,*  
**soror, -ōris, F.,** sister. [set sail.  
**spatium, i, N.,** space, distance ; interval ; time.  
**speciēs, ēī, F.,** appearance, form.  
**spectāculum, i, N.,** spectacle.  
**spectō, āre, āvī, ātum,** look, face.  
**spērō, āre, āvī, ātum,** hope ; expect.  
**spēs, ēī, F.,** hope.  
**spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum,** despoil.  
**stabilitās, tātis, F.,** steadiness.  
**statim, adv.,** immediately.  
**statiō, -ōnis, F.,** guard, outpost.  
**statua, ae, F.,** statue.  
**stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum,** determine.  
**statūra, ae, F.,** stature, size.  
**stō, āre, stetī, statum,** stand.  
**strepitus, ūs, M.,** noise.  
**struō, ere, struxī, structum,** build, raise.  
**studeō, ēre, uī, be** eager for.  
**studium, i, N.,** zeal.  
**stultē, adv.,** foolishly.  
**stultitia, ae, F.,** folly.  
**sub, prep.,** 1. *with abl.,* under, close to ; 2. *with acc.,* close to.  
**subactus, a, um, from** subigo.  
**sub-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum,** draw off ; draw up.  
**subductiō, -ōnis, F.,** hauling on shore, beaching.  
**subēgī, from** subigo.  
**sub-eō, -īre, -ī (ivī), -itum,** draw near, enter ; encounter.  
**sub-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum,** subdue.  
**subitō, adv.,** suddenly.  
**subitus, a, um,** sudden.  
**sub-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum,** place beneath, expose.  
**sublātus, a, um, from** tollo.  
**subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum,** supply.  
**sub-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum,** send to one's aid.  
**sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** drive off or away.  
**sub-sequor, i, -secūtus sum,** follow up.

- subsidium**, I, N., aid ; reinforcements.  
**sub-sum**, -esse, -fuī, be near.  
**sub-veniō**, Ire, -vênī, -ventum, aid (*with dat.*).  
**suc-cēdō**, ere, -cessī, -cessum, take the place of, *with dat.* ; approach, adjoin.  
**suc-cīdō**, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down.  
**suc-currō**, ere, -currī, -cursum, run to aid (*with dat.*).  
**sudes** or **sudis**, is, F. stake.  
**suffragium**, i, N., vote.  
**sui**, sibi, sē, or sēsē, *reflex. pron.*, himself, herself, itself, themselves.  
**summa**, ae, F., total ; chief part ; management ; *chiefly with imperil.*  
**summus**, a, um, *superlative of superus*, highest, greatest ; top of.  
**sūmō**, ere, sumpsī, sumptum, take ; obtain.  
**superbus**, a, um, proud.  
**superior**, ius, *comparative of superus*, higher ; former ; superior.  
**superō**, āre, āvī, ātum, conquer ; excel.  
**super-sum**, -esse, -fuī, be left ; survive.  
**supplicātiō**, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.  
**supplicium**, i, N., punishment ; torture.  
**suprā**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*, above ; over.  
**sus-cipiō**, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake.  
**suspīciō**, -ōnis, F., suspicion.  
**suspīcor**, ārī, ātus sum, suspect.  
**sus-tineō**, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, withstand ; holds one's own.  
**sustuli**, *from tollo*.  
**suus**, a, um, his, her, its, their.

## T

- tālea**, ae, F., bar, rod.  
**talentum**, i, N., talent, a sum of money.  
**tālis**, e, such.  
**tam**, *adv.*, so, so much ; **tam . . . quam**, as or so (much) . . . as.  
**tamen**, *adv.*, nevertheless.  
**tamquam**, *adv.*, as if.  
**tandem**, *adv.*, at length.  
**tangō**, ere, tetigī, tactum, touch ; reach ; border on.  
**tantulus**, a, um, so small.  
**tantum**, *adv.*, only.  
**tantus**, a, um, so great, so much ; as great, as much.  
**tardē**, *adv.*, slowly.  
**tectum**, I, N., roof, abode.



- tegō, ere, texī, tectum, cover ; protect.  
 tēlum, ī, N., weapon, dart.  
 temere, *adv.*, rashly, without good reason.  
 tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole (*of a vehicle*).  
 temperantia, ae, F., self-control.  
 temperō, are, āvī, ātum, control.  
 tempestās, -tātis, F., weather ; tempest.  
 templum, ī, N., temple.  
 temptō, *or* tento, āre, āvī, ātum, try, tempt.  
 tempus, -ōris, N., time ; period ; opportunity ; crisis.  
 teneō, ēre, uī, tentum, hold, keep ; detain.  
 tento, *see* tempto.  
 tergum, ī, N., back, rear ; targum *vertere*, *or* dare, take to flight ; a tergo, in the rear.  
 terra, ae, F., earth, land ; in terris, in the world.  
 terreō, ēre, uī, itum, alarm.  
 terrestris, e, land, of the land.  
 territō, āre, āvī, ātum, frighten.  
 terror, -ōris, M., terror, panic.  
 tertius, a, um, third.  
 testor, ārī, ātus sum, declare.  
 testūdō, -dinis, F., testudo.  
 timeō, ēre, uī, fear, be afraid.  
 timor, -ōris, M., fear, dread, panic.  
 tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise ; remove ; destroy.  
 tormentum, ī, N., engine.  
 tot, *indeclinable*, so many.  
 totidem, *indeclinable*, just as many.  
 tōtus, a, um, whole.  
 trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, hand over, surrender ; hand down.  
 trā-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead across ; lead through.  
 trājectus, ūs, M., crossing, passage.  
 tranquillitās, -tātis, F., calm.  
 trans, *prep. with acc.*, across, over.  
 transactus, a, um, *from* transigo.  
 trans-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead across.  
 trans-eō, īre, -īī (-īvī), -itum, cross.  
 trans-ferō, ferre, -tuli, -lātum, transfer.  
 trans-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, complete.  
 transitus, ūs, M., passing over, crossing.  
 translātus, *from* transfero.  
 transmissus, ūs, M., passage.  
 transportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry, *or* take over.  
 trepidō, āre, āvī, ātum, be in a panic.  
 trepidus, a, um, terrified.  
 tribūnus, ī, M., tribune.

trib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, grant ; ascribe.  
 trīduum, *i*, *N.*, a space of three days.  
 triennium, *i*, *N.*, a space of three years.  
 tripartitō, *adv.*, in three divisions.  
 tripl-ex, -icis, triple.  
 tristis, *e*, sad.  
 trucidō, āre, āvī, ātum, slaughter.  
 tuba, *ae*, *F.*, trumpet.  
 tueor, ēri, tūtus (*or* tuitus) sum, protect.  
 tullī, *from* fero.  
 tum, *adv.*, then ; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.  
 tumulus, *i*, *M.*, hill.  
 turma, *ae*, *F.*, squadron.  
 turpis, *e*, disgraceful.  
 turpitude, inis, *F.*, disgrace.  
 turris, *is*, *F.*, tower.  
 tūtō, *adv.*, safely.  
 tūtor, ārī, ātus sum, guard, defend.  
 tūtus, *a*, *um*, safe.

## U

ūber, eris, fruitful, copious, ready.  
 ubi, *adv.*, when, where.  
 ulciscor, ī, ultus sum, punish, avenge.  
 ullus, *a*, *um*, any.  
 ulterior, ius, *comparative*, farther.  
 ultimus, *a*, *um*, *superlative*, farthest.  
 ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, with provocation.  
 umquam, *adv.*, ever.  
 ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, together.  
 unde, *adv.*, whence.  
 undique, *adv.*, on all sides.  
 ūniversus, *a*, *um*, all together, in a body.  
 ūnus, *a*, *um*, one ; only.  
 urbs, urbis, *F.*, city.  
 urgeō, ēre, ursī, press hard ; *in pass.*, be hard pressed.  
 usque, *adv.*, even, as far as ; always.  
 ūsus, *a*, *um*, *from* utor.  
 ūsus, ūs, *M.*, use, experience ; advantage, need.  
 ut *or* uti, that, in order that, so that ; as ; how ; when.  
 uter, utra, utrum, which (*of two*).  
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (*of two*), both.  
 uti, *see* ut.  
 ūtilis, *e*, useful.  
 ūtilitās, -tātis, *F.*, advantage, utility.  
 ūtor, ī, ūsus, sum, use, employ ; adopt, *with* *abl.*  
 uxor, ōris, *F.*, wife.

## V

- vacō, āre, āvī, ātum, lie waste.  
 vacuus, a, um, empty.  
 vādō, ere, go, advance.  
 vadum, ī, N., ford, shallow.  
 vagor, ārī, ātus sum, roam about.  
 valeō, ēre, uī, itum, be powerful, have weight ; mean.  
 vallēs, is, F., valley.  
 vallum, ī, N., rampart.  
 varius, a, um, different, varied.  
 vasto, āre, āvī, ātum, lay waste.  
 vastus, a, um, immense, vast.  
 vectīgal, -ālis, N., tax.  
 vectīgālis, e, tributary.  
 vectōrius, a, um, for carrying.  
 vehementer, *adv.*, vigorously.  
 vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, carry ; *in pass.*, ride, sail.  
 vel, *conj.*, or ; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.  
 velle, *from* volo.  
 vēlum, ī, N., sail.  
 velut or veluti, *adv.*, just as if.  
 ven-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, sell.  
 venia, ae, F., pardon, favour.  
 veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, come.  
 ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, come often.  
 ventus, ī, M., wind.  
 vēr, vēris, N., spring.  
 verbum, ī, N., word ; verba dare, deceive ; verba facere, speak.  
 vērē, *adv.*, truly.  
 vereor, ēri, itus sum, fear.  
 vergō, ere, lie, face.  
 vērō, *adv.*, in truth ; but, moreover.  
 versor, ārī, ātus sum, be engaged in ; live.  
 ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn.  
 vērum, *conj.*, however, but.  
 vērus, a, um, true.  
 vester, tra, trum, your.  
 vestigium, ī, N., foot-print, mark, spot.  
 vestiō, īre, īvī, itum, clothe.  
 vestitus, us, M., clothing.  
 vestis, is, F., clothing ; garment.  
 vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, forbid.  
 vet-us, -eris, old.  
 vexillum, ī, N., flag.  
 vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, ravage, oppress.

- vi*, from *vis*.  
*via*, ae, F., way, route.  
*viator*, -ōris, M., traveller.  
*viē*, from *vinco*.  
*victoria*, ae, F., victory.  
*victus*, a, um, from *vinco*.  
*victus*, ūs, M., life, living.  
*vīcus*, I, M., village.  
*videō*, ēre, *vidī*, *vīsum*, see ; in *pass.*, be seen, seem, seem  
*vigilia*, ae, F., watch. [good.  
*vigor*, -ōris, M., strength.  
*vinciō*, īre, *vinxī*, *vinctum*, bind.  
*vincō*, ere, *viē*, *victum*, conquer.  
*vinctus*, a, um, from *vincio*.  
*vinculum*, I, N., chain.  
*vīnum*, I, N., wine.  
*vir*, *virī*, M., man.  
*vīres*, ium, from *vis*.  
*virgo*, -ginis, F., maiden.  
*virtus*, -tūtis, F., bravery ; virtue ; energy.  
*vis*, vim, *vi*, *plur.*, *vires*, ium, F., force, might ; *plur.*,  
*visus*, a, um, from *video*. [strength.  
*visus*, ūs, M., sight, spectacle.  
*vīta*, ae, F., life.  
*vitium*, I, N., fault.  
*vītō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, avoid.  
*vivō*, ere, *vixī*, *victum*, live.  
*vīvus*, a, um, alive.  
*vix*, *adv.*, scarcely.  
*vixī*, from *vivo*.  
*vocō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, call, invite.  
*volō*, velle, *volui*, wish, be willing.  
*voluntās*, -tātis, F., wish, good-will.  
*voluptās*, -tātis, F., pleasure.  
*vox*, *vōcis*, F., voice.  
*vulgus*, I, N., the common people.  
*vulnerō*, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, wound.  
*vulnus*, -eris, N., wound ; blow.  
*vultus*, ūs, M., look ; countenance.



# INDEX.

N=foot-note. The superior numbers refer to the foot-notes. Other numbers designate the pages.

Ablative Absolute, 12, 14 (with Present Participle, 31 N<sup>3</sup>).

Ablative of Description, 106.

Ablative of Origin, Measure of Difference, 107.

Ablative of Respect, Route, etc., 108.

Abstract Terms, 122.

Accusative and Infinitive, 1, 2, 6, 7.

Accusative and Future Infinitive, 4, 21 N<sup>2</sup>.

Adjectives gov. Genitive, 96.

Adjectives gov. Dative, 101.

Adjectives gov. Ablative, 106.

Agent, 10 N<sup>3</sup>, 40, 102.

And not, and no one, etc., 2 N<sup>3</sup>, 142 N<sup>7</sup>.

Asking, advising, commanding, 10.

## Cases:

Nominative, 90.

Genitive, 96.

Dative, 101.

Accusative, 92.

Vocative, 132.

Locative, 9 N<sup>1</sup>.

Ablative, 105.

Cognate Accusative, 92.

Commands, 124.

Comparatives and *quam*, 107.

Conditions, 64.

## Conjunctions:

*cum*, 6, 60.

*que* and *atque*, 83, N<sup>3</sup> N<sup>4</sup>.

*dum*, 62.

*priusquam*, 62.

*quin*, 10 N<sup>4</sup>, 91 N<sup>2</sup>.

*quo minus*, 10 N<sup>4</sup>.

Connectives, 119, 24 N<sup>2</sup>, 25 N<sup>4</sup>, 26 N<sup>5</sup> N<sup>6</sup>, 29 N<sup>3</sup> 32 N<sup>1</sup>  
35 N<sup>5</sup> N<sup>6</sup>, 39 N<sup>4</sup>, 41 N<sup>1</sup> N<sup>2</sup> N<sup>3</sup>, 49 N<sup>3</sup>, 54 N<sup>5</sup> N<sup>7</sup>, 83 N<sup>5</sup>,  
101 N<sup>10</sup>.

Demonstratives, 58 N<sup>1</sup> N<sup>2</sup> N<sup>3</sup>, 59 N<sup>5</sup> N<sup>6</sup>.

Dependent Questions, 43.

Double Accusative, 93.

Emphasis, 49 N<sup>1</sup>, 147 N<sup>3</sup>.

Exhortations, 124.

Fearing, Verbs of, 4.

Genitive, Descriptive, Objective, Partitive, etc., 97.

Genitive of Price, Place, etc., 98.

Gerund, 33.

Gerundive, 36, 40.

Gerundive, with *curo*, 128.

Gerundive, explanatory or epexegetical, 128.

Idioms, 128.

Imperative, 126.

Impersonal Construction, 52, 53, 55.

Impersonal Verbs, *piget*, *miseret*, etc., 93.

Indirect Narration:

Mood, 67, 69.

Tense, 71.

Pronouns and Adverbs, 72.

Reflexives, 74.

Conditional Clauses, 75.

Virtual Indirect Narration, 78.

Indefinite Frequency of Action, 60, 61 N<sup>1</sup>, 81.

Means, Instrument, 105.

Model Sentence, 114.

*Ne....quidem*, 44 N<sup>2</sup>, 145 N<sup>12</sup>.

*Not....even*, 44 N<sup>2</sup>, 145 N<sup>12</sup>.

Participles:

Present, 30.

Perfect, 11.

Deponents, 17.

Persuading, Warning, etc., 5.

Period, Analysis of, 111.

Place to which, 94.

Place from which, 108.

Place in which, 98.

Position of Words, 111-122.

*Possum*, used impersonally, 54 N<sup>2</sup>.

*Praeficio*, *infero*, *impero*, with Acc. and Dat., 50.

Predicative Dative, 103.

Preventing, Verbs of, 10 N<sup>1</sup> (*prohibeo*, 26 N<sup>2</sup> N<sup>3</sup>).

Pronouns, 45, 56, 57, 58, 131.

Purpose, 8, 10, 86, 34 N<sup>1</sup>, 37, 39 N<sup>1</sup> N<sup>2</sup> N<sup>3</sup>, 5 N<sup>3</sup>, 48.

Relative, Causal, 96 N<sup>1</sup>.

Relative Pronoun, 45, 46, 48.

Result, 7, 85.

*Se* and *suus*, 3, 73 N<sup>2</sup>, 75 N<sup>2</sup> N<sup>3</sup> N<sup>5</sup>.

Sequence of Tenses, 84.

Supine in *um*, 5 N<sup>3</sup>.

Tenses of Indicative, 80.

Tenses of Infinitive, 88.

Time:

Duration, 93.

Point of, 10 N<sup>5</sup>, 106.

Within which, 107.

Before and After, 107.

Transitive Verbs used Intransitively, 126.

*Ut*=as, 53 N<sup>1</sup>.

Verbs gov. Genitive, 96.

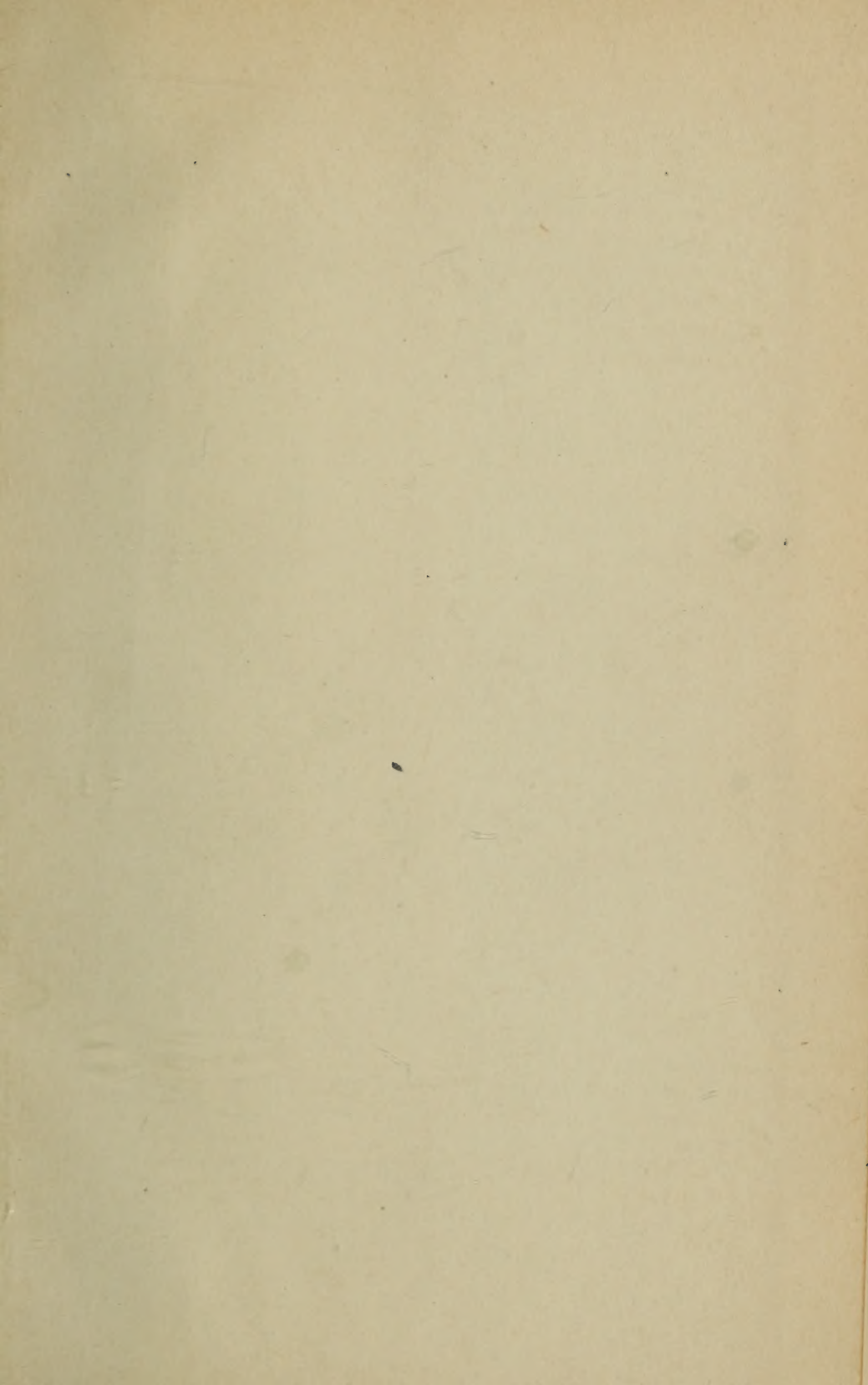
Verbs gov. Dative, 101.

Verbs gov. Accusative, 92.

Verbs gov. Ablative, 106.

Whether....or, 82 N<sup>1</sup>, 83 N<sup>3</sup>.

Wishes, 124.







295893

LaL.Gr  
M6816kx

Author Mitchell, George W.

Title Latin composition.

# University of Toronto Library

**DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket  
Under Pat. "Ref. Index File"  
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU

